

Integrated Management Module II User's Guide



Integrated Management Module II User's Guide

Second Edition (December 2012)

Contents

Tables
Chapter 1. Introduction
IMM2 Basic, Standard, and Advanced Level features 2
IMM2 Basic Level features
IMM2 Standard Level features
IMM2 Advanced Level features
IMM2 feature improvements
Upgrading IMM2
Using IMM2 with the BladeCenter advanced
management module
Web browser and operating-system requirements 4
Notices used in this book

Chapter 2. Opening and using the IMM2

web interface		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	5
Accessing the IMM2 web ir	nterf	ace								5
Setting up the IMM2 net	woi	k c	on	nec	tio	n tł	nro	ugł	n	
the IBM System x Server	Fir	mv	vare	e Se	etu	p u	tili	ty		5
Logging in to the IMM2										8
IMM2 action descriptions .										9

Chapter 3. IMM2 web user interface

overview					-	-			13
Web session settings									13
Page auto refresh									13
Trespass message									14
Log out									15
System Status tab									16
Events tab									21
Event log									21
Event recipients									24
Service and support tab .									26
Download service data									26
Server management tab .									27
Server firmware									28
Remote control									34
Server properties									39
Server power actions .								•	42
Disks								•	43
Memory								•	43
Processors								•	44
Server timeouts								•	45
PXE network boot									45
Latest OS failure screen								•	46
IMM Management tab							•		46
Chapter 4. Configuring	g t	he	e IN	ЛN	2				47
Setting server timeouts .									50
Setting the IMM2 date and the	im	5							51
Configuring the serial port s	etti	ng	s						53
Configuring user accounts									
User accounts									54

Configuring global login settings			. 58
General settings		•	. 58
Account security policy settings		•	. 59
Configuring network protocols Configuring the Ethernet settings		•	. 62
Configuring the Ethernet settings Configuring SNMP alert settings		•	. 62
Configuring SNMP alert settings		•	. 64
Configuring DNS		•	. 66
Configuring DDNS		•	. 66
Configuring SMTP		•	. 67
Configuring LDAP		•	. 67
Configuring Telnet		•	. 72
Configuring USB		•	. 73
Configuring port assignments		•	. 73
Configuring security settings		•	. 74
Configuring HTTPS protocol		•	. 75
Configuring CIM over HTTPS protocol			. 76
Configuring LDAP client protocol			. //
Configuring the Secure Shell server .		•	. 79
SSL overview.		•	. 80
SSL certificate handling		•	. 80
SSL certificate management		•	. 80
Restoring and modifying your IMM configures Restarting the IMM2	ırat	ion	82
Restarting the IMM2		•	. 82
Resetting the IMM2 to the factory defaults		•	. 83
Activation management key		•	. 84
	_	_	
Chapter 5. Monitoring the server	sta	tus	85
Viewing the system status			. 85
Viewing the system status	 	•	. 85 . 87
Viewing the system status	 	•	. 85 . 87
Viewing the system status	 	•	. 85 . 87
Viewing the system status	 		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89
Viewing the system status	 		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93
Viewing the system status	 		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94
Viewing the system status	• • • • • • • • • •		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94
Viewing the system status	 		. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96
Viewing the system status	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96
Viewing the system status	 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98
Viewing the system status		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100
Viewing the system status	 	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98
Viewing the system status	 	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 93 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106 . 107
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106 . 107 . 113
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106 . 107 . 113 . 113
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106 . 107 . 113 . 113 . 117
Viewing the system status	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 85 . 87 . 88 . 89 . 94 . 95 . 96 . 96 . 96 . 97 . 97 . 98 . 100 . 101 . 101 . 102 . 102 . 105 . 106 . 107 . 113 . 113

Chapter 7. Features	5 O	n	De	em	an	d				125
Installing an activation k	ey									. 125
Installing an activation k Removing an activation	key									. 127
Ū.	5									
Chapter 8. Commai	٦d	·lir	۱e	in	tei	rfa	ce			129
Managing the IMM2 wit	h Il	PM	Ι							
Using IPMItool										. 129
Accessing the command-	lin	e ir	nte	rfao	ce					. 129
Logging in to the comma										
Configuring serial-to-Tel	net	or	SS	H	red	ire	tio	n		. 130
Command syntax										. 130
Command syntax Features and limitations										. 131
Alphabetical command l	istii	no	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	132
Utility commands	io en	6	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	133
exit command										
help command										
history command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	133
history command . Monitor commands .	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 133 . 134
clearlog command.	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	134
fans command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	134
ffdc command										
led command	•		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	125
led command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 135
readlog command . show command .	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 137
syshealth command	•		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	. 100
temps command .										
volts command.	•		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	. 139
vpd command	•		. 1	•	•	•	1.	•	•	. 140
vpd command Server power and restart power command .	co	ntr	01	cor	nm	and	as	•	•	. 140
power command . pxeboot command.	•		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	. 140
reset command										
Serial redirect command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 141
console command . Configuration command accseccfg command	•		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	. 141
Configuration commands	S		•	•	·	•	•	•	•	. 141
accsecctg command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 142
alertcfg command .										
asu command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 144
backup command .	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 148
dhcpinfo command	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 148
dns command										
ethtousb command					•					. 151
01	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	. 151
0	•		•	•	•	•	•	•		. 152
, 0	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	. 154
1	•			•		•	•	•	•	. 155
1				•				•	•	. 157
passwordcfg comman	d			•				•	•	. 157
I				•				•	•	. 158
				•				•	•	. 159
restore command .										. 160
restoredefaults comma	and	l								. 160
set command										. 161
smtp command										. 161
snmp command .										. 162
snmpalerts command										. 164
srcfg command	•									. 166

sshcfg command	166
ssl command	167
sslcfg command	168
telnetcfg command	171
thermal command	171
timeouts command	172
usbeth command	172
users command	173
IMM2 control commands	177
alertentries command.	
batch command	179
clearcfg command	180
clock command.	180
	181
info command	181
resetsp command	
1	
Appendix A. Getting help and	
technical assistance	
Before you call	183
Using the documentation	184
Getting help and information from the World Wide	
Web	184
Creating a personalized support web page	
Software service and support	185
Hardware service and support	185
IBM Taiwan product service	
Appendix B. Notices	187
Trademarks	187
Important notes	188
Trademarks	189
	190
Telecommunication regulatory statement	
Electronic emission notices	
Federal Communications Commission (FCC)	
	190
Industry Canada Class A emission compliance	170
statement.	191
Avis de conformité à la réglementation	1/1
0	191
Australia and New Zealand Class A statement	191
European Union EMC Directive conformance	171
	191
	191 191
	100
	17/
Koros Communications Commission (KCC)	
Korea Communications Commission (KCC) statement.	193

Tables

1.	IMM2 actions	. 9
2.	Server power and operating states	18
3.	Security setting policy values	60
4.	Permission bits	71
5.	System state descriptions	86

6.	Power actions and descriptions	94
7.	ASU commands	4
8.	Transaction commands	7
9.	Limits for particulates and gases 18	39

Chapter 1. Introduction

The Integrated Management Module II service processor (IMM2) is the second generation of the Integrated Management Module (IMM) service processor that consolidates the service processor functionality, Super I/O, video controller, and remote presence capabilities into a single chip on the server system board. As was the case with IMM, IMM2 offers several improvements over the combined functionality of the baseboard management controller (BMC) and the Remote Supervisor Adapter II including these features:

- Choice of a dedicated or shared Ethernet connection for systems management.
- One IP address for both the Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) and the service processor interface. The feature does not apply to IBM BladeCenter blade servers.
- Embedded Dynamic System Analysis (DSA).
- Remote configuration with Advanced Settings Utility (ASU). The feature does not apply to IBM BladeCenter blade servers.
- Capability for applications and tools to access the IMM2 either in-band or out-of-band. Only the in-band IMM2 connection is supported on IBM BladeCenter blade servers.
- Enhanced remote-presence capabilities. The feature does not apply to IBM BladeCenter blade servers.

Notes:

- A dedicated systems-management network port is not available on IBM BladeCenter blade servers and some System x servers; for these servers only the *shared* setting is available.
- For IBM BladeCenter blade servers the IBM BladeCenter advanced management module is the primary management module for systems-management functions and keyboard/video/mouse (KVM) multiplexing.

IBM System x[®] Server Firmware is IBM's implementation of Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI). It replaces the basic input/output system (BIOS) in IBM System x servers and IBM BladeCenter blade servers. The BIOS was the standard firmware code that controlled basic hardware operations, such as interactions with diskette drives, hard disk drives, and the keyboard. IBM System x Server Firmware offers several features that BIOS does not, including UEFI 2.3 compliance, iSCSI compatibility, Active Energy Manager technology, and enhanced reliability and service capabilities. The Setup utility provides server information, server setup, customization compatibility, and establishes the boot device order.

Notes:

- IBM System x Server Firmware is often called server firmware, and occasionally called UEFI, in this document.
- IBM System x Server Firmware is fully compatible with non-UEFI operating systems.
- For more information about using IBM System x Server Firmware, see the documentation that came with your IBM server.

This document explains how to use the functions of the IMM2 in an IBM server. The IMM2 works with IBM System x Server Firmware to provide systems-management capability for System x, BladeCenter, and Next Generation Platform (NGP) servers.

To check for firmware updates, complete the following steps.

Note: The first time you access the IBM Support Portal, you must choose the product category, product family, and model numbers for your storage subsystems. The next time you access the IBM Support Portal, the products you selected initially are preloaded by the website, and only the links for your products are displayed. To change or add to your product list, click the **Manage my product lists** link.

Changes are made periodically to the IBM website. Procedures for locating firmware and documentation might vary slightly from what is described in this document.

- 1. Go to http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal.
- 2. Under Choose your products, select Browse for a product and expand Hardware.
- **3**. Depending on your type of server, click **Systems** > **System x** or **Systems** > **BladeCenter**, and check the box for your server or servers.
- 4. Under Choose your task, click Downloads.
- 5. Under See your results, click View your page.
- 6. In the Flashes & alerts box, click the link for the applicable download or click **More results** to see additional links.

IMM2 Basic, Standard, and Advanced Level features

With IMM2, Basic, Standard and Advanced levels of IMM2 functionality are offered. See the documentation for your server for more information about the level of IMM2 installed in your IBM server. All levels provide the following:

- · Around-the-clock remote access and management of your server
- · Remote management independent of the status of the managed server
- Remote control of hardware and operating systems

In addition, Standard and Advanced levels support web-based management with standard web browsers.

Note: Some features might not apply to IBM BladeCenter bladeservers.

The following is a list of IMM2 basic level features:

IMM2 Basic Level features

The following is a list of IMM2 Basic Level features:

- IPMI 2.0 Interface
- Thermal Monitoring
- Fan Control
- LED Management
- Server Power/Reset Control
- Sensor Monitoring

- IPMI Platform Event Trap Alerting
- IPMI Serial over LAN

IMM2 Standard Level features

The following is a list of IMM2 Standard Level features:

- All of the IMM2 Basic Level features
- Web-based Management with Standard Web Browsers
- SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 Interfaces
- Telnet and SSH CLI
- Scheduled Server Power/Reset Control
- Human-Readable Event and Audit Logging
- System Health Indication
- Operating System Loader and Operating System Watchdogs
- LDAP Authentication and Authorization
- SNMP TRAP, E-mail, Syslog, and CIM Indication Alerting
- NTP Clock Synchronization
- Serial Console Redirection over Telnet/SSH

IMM2 Advanced Level features

The following is a list of IMM2 Advanced Level features:

- All of the IMM2 Basic and Standard Level features
- Remote Presence Java and ActivX Clients:
 - Remote Keyboard, Video, and Mouse Support
 - Remote Media
 - Remote Disk on Card
- Failure Screen Capture for Operating System hangs

IMM2 feature improvements

The following is a list of IMM2 feature improvements over the IMM:

- Security (trusted service processor):
 - Secure boot
 - Signed updates
 - IMM2 Core Root for Trust Measurement
 - Trusted Platform Module
- New Web GUI design consistent across IBM System x
- · Increased remote presence video resolution and color depth
- ActiveX remote presence client
- Ethernet-over-USB interface upgraded to USB 2.0
- Syslog alerting
- No IMM2 reset required after configuration changes

Upgrading IMM2

If your IBM server came with Basic level or Standard level IMM2 firmware functionality, you might be able to upgrade the IMM2 functionality in your server. For more information about available upgrade levels and how to order, see Chapter 7, "Features on Demand," on page 125.

Using IMM2 with the BladeCenter advanced management module

The BladeCenter advanced management module is the standard systems-management interface for IBM BladeCenter products. Although the IMM2 is now included in some IBM BladeCenter blade servers, the advanced management module remains the management module for systems-management functions and KVM multiplexing for IBM BladeCenter products including IBM blade servers.

There is no external network access to the IMM2 on IBM BladeCenter blade servers and the advanced management module must be used for remote management of IBM BladeCenter blade servers. The IMM2 replaces the functionality of the BMC and the Concurrent Keyboard, Video and Mouse (cKVM) option card available in past IBM blade server products.

Web browser and operating-system requirements

The IMM2 web interface requires the Java[™] Plug-in 1.5 or later (for the remote presence feature) and one of the following web browsers:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer version 7.0 or later
- Mozilla Firefox version 3.5 or later

The following server operating systems have USB support, which is required for the remote presence feature:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux versions 4.0 and 5.0
- SUSE Linux version 10.0
- Novell NetWare 6.5

Notices used in this book

The following notices are used in the documentation:

- Note: These notices provide important tips, guidance, or advice.
- **Important:** These notices provide information or advice that might help you avoid inconvenient or problem situations.
- Attention: These notices indicate potential damage to programs, devices, or data. An attention notice is placed just before the instruction or situation in which damage might occur.

Chapter 2. Opening and using the IMM2 web interface

Important: This section does not apply to IBM BladeCenter and IBM blade servers. Although the IMM2 is standard in some IBM BladeCenter products and IBM blade servers, the IBM BladeCenter advanced management module is the primary management module for systems-management functions and KVM multiplexing for IBM BladeCenter products including IBM blade servers.

The IMM2 combines service processor functions, a video controller, and remote presence function (when an optional virtual media key is installed) in a single chip. To access the IMM2 remotely by using the IMM2 web interface, you must first log in. This chapter describes the login procedures and the actions that you can perform from the IMM2 web interface.

Accessing the IMM2 web interface

The IMM2 supports static and Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) IPv4 addressing. The default static IPv4 address assigned to the IMM2 is 192.168.70.125. The IMM2 is initially configured to attempt to obtain an address from a DHCP server, and if it cannot, it uses the static IPv4 address.

The IMM2 also supports IPv6, but the IMM2 does not have a fixed static IPv6 IP address by default. For initial access to the IMM2 in an IPv6 environment, you can either use the IPv4 IP address or the IPv6 link-local address. The IMM2 generates a unique link-local IPv6 address, which is shown in the IMM2 web interface on the Network Interfaces page. The link-local IPv6 address has the same format as the following example.

fe80::21a:64ff:fee6:4d5

When you access the IMM2, the following IPv6 conditions are set as default:

- Automatic IPv6 address configuration is enabled.
- IPv6 static IP address configuration is disabled.
- DHCPv6 is enabled.
- Stateless auto-configuration is enabled.

The IMM2 provides the choice of using a dedicated systems-management network connection (if applicable) or one that is shared with the server. The default connection for rack-mounted and tower servers is to use the dedicated systems-management network connector.

Note: A dedicated systems-management network port might not be available on your server. If your hardware does not have a dedicated network port, the *shared* setting is the only IMM2 setting available.

Setting up the IMM2 network connection through the IBM System x Server Firmware Setup utility

After you start the server, you can use the Setup utility to select an IMM2 network connection. The server with the IMM2 hardware must be connected to a DHCP server, or the server network must be configured to use the IMM2 static IP address. To set up the IMM2 network connection through the Setup utility, complete the following steps:

1. Turn on the server. The IBM System x Server Firmware welcome screen is displayed.



Note: Approximately 90 seconds after the server is connected to ac power, the power-control button becomes active.

- 2. When the prompt <F1> Setup is displayed, press F1. If you have set both a power-on password and an administrator password, you must type the administrator password to access the full Setup utility menu.
- 3. From the Setup utility main menu, select System Settings.
- 4. On the next screen, select Integrated Management Module.
- 5. On the next screen, select Network Configuration.
- 6. Highlight **DHCP Control**. There are three IMM2 network connection choices in the **DHCP Control** field:
 - Static IP
 - DHCP Enabled
 - DHCP with Failover (default)

	Network (Configuration	
Network Inter Burned-in MAC Hostname DHCP Control IP Address Submet Mask Default Gatew IP6 Local Link Ad Advanced IMM	2 Address 00-1A-64 DST110 Jay DHCP Enal DHCP eiti <enabled></enabled>	-E6-11-AD prefere	ır DHCP Contro nıces.
↑↓=Move Highl		elete Entru Esc=Exit	

- 7. Select one of the network connection choices.
- **8**. If you choose to use a static IP address, you must specify the IP address, the subnet mask, and the default gateway.
- **9**. You can also use the Setup utility to select a dedicated network connection (if your server has a dedicated network port) or a shared IMM2 network connection.

Notes:

- A dedicated systems-management network port might not be available on your server. If your hardware does not have a dedicated network port, the *shared* setting is the only IMM2 setting available. On the Network Configuration screen, select Dedicated (if applicable) or Shared in the Network Interface Port field.
- To find the locations of the Ethernet connectors on your server that are used by the IMM2, see the documentation that came with your server.
- 10. Scroll down and select Save Network Settings.
- 11. Exit from the Setup utility.

Notes:

- You must wait approximately 1 minute for changes to take effect before the server firmware is functional again.
- You can also configure the IMM2 network connection through the IMM2 web interface or command-line interface (CLI). In the IMM2 web interface, network connections are configured on the Network Protocol Properties page (select Network from the IMM Management menu). In the IMM2 CLI, network connections are configured using several commands that depend on the configuration of your installation.

Logging in to the IMM2

Important: The IMM2 is set initially with a user name of USERID and password of PASSWORD (with a zero, not the letter O). This default user setting has Supervisor access. Change this user name and password during your initial configuration for enhanced security.

To access the IMM2 through the IMM2 web interface, complete the following steps:

- 1. Open a web browser. In the address or URL field, type the IP address or host name of the IMM2 to which you want to connect.
- 2. Type your user name and password in the IMM2 Login window as shown in the following illustration. If you are using the IMM2 for the first time, you can obtain your user name and password from your system administrator. All login attempts are documented in the event log. Depending on how your system administrator configured the user ID, you might need to enter a new password.

IBM.	
Integrated Management Module	
User name:	
Inactive session timeout: 20 minutes -	
Log In	
Note: To ensure security and avoid login conflicts, always end your sessions using the "Log out" option in the upper right area of the web page.	
Supported Browsers	
Loopsed Materials - Property of IEM Corp. 6; IEM Corporation and other(s) 2012. ISM's a registered trademark of the IBM Corporation in the United States, other counters, or both	

3. Click **Log In** to start the session. The browser opens the System Status page, as shown in the following illustration. This page gives you a quick view of the server status and the server health summary.

IBM Integrated Managen	nent Module II						USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Ev	vents Service and Support	 ✓ Server Management → 	IMM Management 👻	Search					
IBM Flex System Add System Descriptive Name	n x240 with 10G	b							
System Status Power: Off System state: System pow	n page provides an at-a-glance er off/State unknown ower Actions Remote Co			hich this IMM reside	s. Common informa	ition and action:	s are co-locat	ed on this one page.	
Severity . Source	Date	Message							
Hardware Health 9									
Component Type	Status								
Disks	Normal								
Processors	Normal								
Memory	Normal								
System	Mormal								

For descriptions of the actions that you can perform from the tabs at the top of the IMM2 web interface, see "IMM2 action descriptions" on page 9.

IMM2 action descriptions

Navigate to the top of the IMM2 window to perform activities with the IMM2. The title bar identifies the user name that is logged in. The title bar allows you to configure **Settings** for the status screen refresh rate and a custom trespass message, and **Log out** of the IMM2 web interface. Beneath the title bar are tabs that allow you to access various IMM2 functions, as listed in Table 1.



Table 1. IMM2 actions

Tab	Selection	Description
System Status		The System Status page allows you to view system status, active system events, and hardware health information. It provides quick links to the System Information, Server Power Actions, and Remote Control functions of the Server Management tab, and allows you to view an image of the last operating-system-failure screen capture. See "System Status tab" on page 16 and "Viewing the system status" on page 85 for additional information.
Events Event Log The Event Log page disp IMM2 event log. The log are reported, including in configuration changes. A IMM2 date and time settic configured to do so. You export them to a text file	The Event Log page displays entries that are currently stored in the IMM2 event log. The log includes a text description of system events that are reported, including information about all remote access attempts and configuration changes. All events in the log are time stamped, using the IMM2 date and time settings. Some events also generate alerts, if they are configured to do so. You can sort and filter events in the event log and export them to a text file. See "Events tab" on page 21 and "Managing the event log" on page 113 for additional information.	
	Event Recipients	The Event Recipients page allows you to manage who will be notified of system events. It allows you to configure each recipient, and manage settings that apply to all event recipients. You can also generate a test event to verify notification feature operation. See "Event recipients" on page 24 and "Notification of system events" on page 117 for additional information.
Service and Support	Download Service Data	The Download Service Data page creates a compressed file of information that can be used by IBM Support to assist you. See "Download service data" on page 26 and "Collecting service and support information" on page 122 for additional information.

Table 1. IMM2 actions (continued)

Tab	Selection	Description
Server Management	Server Firmware	The Server Firmware page displays firmware levels and allows you to update the IMM2 firmware, server firmware, and DSA firmware. See "Server firmware" on page 28 and "Updating the server firmware" on page 107 for additional information.
	Remote Control	The Remote Control page allows you to control the server at the operating system level. It provides access to both Remote Disk and Remote Console functionality. You can view and operate the server console from your computer, and you can mount one of your computer disk drives, such as the CD-ROM drive or the diskette drive, on the server. When you have mounted a disk, you can use it to restart the server and to update firmware on the server. The mounted disk appears as a USB disk drive that is attached to the server. See "Remote control" on page 34 and "Remote presence and remote control functions" on page 95 for additional information.
	Server Properties	The Server Properties page provides access to various properties, status conditions, and settings for your server. The following options are available from the Server Properties page:
		• The General Settings tab displays information that identifies the system to operations and support personnel.
		• The LEDs tab displays the status of all system LEDs. It also allows you to change the state of the location LED.
		• The Hardware Information tab displays server vital product data (VPD). The IMM2 collects server information, server component information, and network hardware information.
		• The Environmentals tab displays voltage and temperature information for the server and its components.
		• The Hardware Activity tab displays a history of Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) components that have been added to or removed from the system.
		See "Server properties" on page 39 for additional information.
	Server Power Actions	The Server Power Actions page provides full remote power control over your server with power-on, power-off, and restart actions. See "Server power actions" on page 42 and "Controlling the power status of the server" on page 94 for additional information.
	Disks	The Hard Disks page displays the status of hard disk drives in the server. You can click on a drive name to display active events for the hard disk drive. See "Disks" on page 43 for additional information.
	Memory	The Memory page displays the memory modules available in the system, along with their status, type, and capacity. You can click on a module name to display an event and additional hardware information for the memory module. If you remove or replace a dual inline memory module (DIMM), the server needs to be powered on at least once after the removal or replacement to display the correct memory information. See "Memory" on page 43 for additional information.

Table 1. IMM2 actions (continued)

Tab	Selection	Description
Server Management (continued)	Processors	The CPUs page displays the microprocessors in the system, along with their status and clock speed. You can click on a microprocessor name to display events and additional hardware information for the microprocessor. See "Processors" on page 44 for additional information.
	Server Timeouts	The Server Timeouts page allows you to manage server start timeouts to detect and recover from server hang occurrences. See "Server timeouts" on page 45 and "Setting server timeouts" on page 50 for additional information.
	PXE Network Boot	The PXE Network Boot page allows you to change the host server startup (boot) sequence for the next restart to attempt a Preboot Execution Environment (PXE)/Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) network startup. The host startup sequence will be altered only if the host is not under Privileged Access Protection (PAP). See "PXE network boot" on page 45 and "Setting up PXE network boot" on page 106 for additional information.
	Latest OS Failure Screen	The Latest OS Failure Screen page displays a screen image (when available), of the most recent operating system failure on the server. For your IMM2 to capture operating system failure screens, the operating system watchdog must be enabled. See "Latest OS failure screen" on page 46 and "Capturing the latest OS failure screen data" on page 124 for additional information.
IMM Management (continued on next page)	IMM Properties	The IMM Properties page provides access to various properties and settings for your IMM2. The following options are available from the IMM Properties page:
r****		 The Firmware tab provides a link to the Server Firmware section of Server Management.
		• The IMM Date and Time Settings tab allows you to view and configure date and time settings for the IMM2.
		• The Serial Port tab configures the IMM2 serial port settings. These settings include the serial port baud rate used by the serial port redirection function and the key sequence to switch between the serial redirection and CLI modes.
		See Chapter 4, "Configuring the IMM2," on page 47 for additional information.
	Users	The Users page configures the IMM2 login profiles and global login settings. You can also view user accounts that are currently logged in to the IMM2. Global login settings include enabling Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server authentication, setting the web inactivity timeout, and customizing the account security settings. See "Configuring user accounts" on page 54 for additional information.

Table 1. IMM2 actions (continued)

Tab	Selection	Description
IMM Management	Network	The Network Protocol Properties page provides access to networking properties, status, and settings for your IMM2:
(continued)		• The Ethernet tab manages how the IMM2 communicates using Ethernet.
		• The SNMP tab configures the SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 agents.
		• The DNS tab configures the DNS servers that the IMM2 interacts with.
		• The DDNS tab enables or disables and configures Dynamic DNS for the IMM2.
		• The SMTP tab configures SMTP server information used for alerts sent via email.
		• The LDAP tab configures user authentication for use with one or more LDAP servers.
		• The Telnet tab manages Telnet access to the IMM2.
		• The USB tab controls the USB interface used for in-band communication between the server and the IMM2. These settings do not affect the USB remote control functions (keyboard, mouse, and mass storage).
		• The Port Assignments tab allows you to change the port numbers used by some services on the IMM2.
		See "Configuring network protocols" on page 62 for additional information.
	Security	The IMM Security page provides access to security properties, status, and settings for your IMM2:
		• The HTTPS Server tab allows you to enable or disable the HTTPS server and manage its certificates.
		• The CIM Over HTTPS tab allows you to enable or disable CIM over HTTPS and manage its certificates.
		• The LDAP Client tab allows you to enable or disable LDAP security and manage its certificates.
		 The SSH Server tab allows you to enable or disable the SSH server and manage its certificates.
		See "Configuring security settings" on page 74 for additional information.
	IMM Configuration	The IMM Configuration page displays a summary of the current IMM2 configuration settings. See "Restoring and modifying your IMM configuration" on page 82 for additional information.
	Restart IMM	The Restart IMM page allows you to reset the IMM2. See "Restarting the IMM2" on page 82 for additional information.
	Reset IMM to factory defaults	The Reset IMM to factory defaults page allows you to reset the configuration of the IMM2 to the factory defaults. See "Resetting the IMM2 to the factory defaults" on page 83 for additional information.
		Attention: When you click Reset IMM to factory defaults , all modifications that you have made to the IMM2 are lost.
	Activation Key Management	The Activation Key Management page allows you to manage activation keys for optional IMM2 or server Features on Demand (FoD) features. See "Activation management key" on page 84 for additional information.

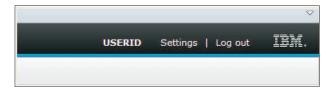
Chapter 3. IMM2 web user interface overview

This chapter provides an overview of how to use the IMM2 web user interface features.

Web session settings

This section provides information about the settings for the web interface session main page.

The IMM2 main page displays menu selections in the upper right area of the web page. These menu items allow you to configure the web page refresh behavior and the message that is displayed to a user when the user enters their credentials to login. The following illustration shows the menu selections in the upper right area of the web page.

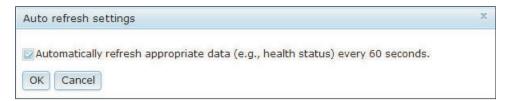


Click the **Settings** item and the following menu selections display:

USERID	Settings Lies out TEW
	Page Auto Refresh
	vrespass Message

Page auto refresh

Use the **Page Auto Refresh** option under the Settings menu item in the top upper right area of the web session page to set the page content to automatically refresh every 60 seconds. To set the page content to refresh every 60 seconds, select the **Automatically refresh appropriate data...** check box and press **OK**. To disable the automatic page refresh, deselect the check box and press **OK**. The following illustration shows the Auto refresh settings window.



Some IMM2 web pages are automatically refreshed, even if the automatic refresh check box is not selected. IMM2 web pages that are automatically refreshed are as follows:

• System Status:

The system and power status is refreshed automatically every three seconds.

• Server Power Actions: (under the Server Management tab):

Power status is refreshed automatically every three seconds.

• **Remote Control:** (under the Server Management tab):

The Start remote control... buttons are automatically refreshed every second. The Session List table is refreshed once every 60 seconds.

Notes:

- If you navigate from your web browser to a web page that automatically refreshes, the inactivity timeout will not automatically end your web session.
- If you send a request to a Remote Control user using the Remote Control option page under Server Management, your web session will not timeout regardless of which web page you navigate to until a response is received from the Remote Control user, or until the Remote Control user times out. When the request from the Remote Control user completes processing, the inactivity timeout function will resume.

Note: The preceding note applies to all web pages.

• The IMM2 firmware supports up to six simultaneous web sessions. To free up sessions for other users, log out of the web session when you are finished, rather than waiting on the inactivity timeout to automatically close your session. If you leave the browser while on an IMM2 web page that automatically refreshes, your web session will not automatically close due to inactivity.

Trespass message

Use the **Trespass Message** option under the Settings menu item in the top upper right area of the web session page to setup a message that you want displayed when a user logs in to the IMM2 server. The following screen displays when you select the Trespass Message option. Enter the message text that you want displayed to the user in the field provided and press **OK**.



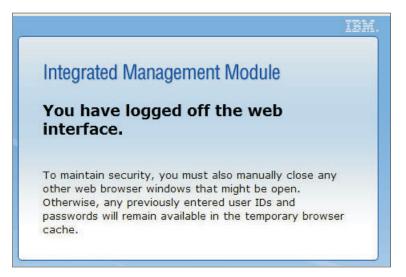
The message text will be displayed in the Message area of the IMM2 login page when a user logs in, as shown in the following illustration.

_	
=	Password:
	Inactive session timeout:
	No timeout 👻
	Message:
	WARNING! This computer system and network is PRIVATE AND PROPRIETARY and may only be accessed by authorized users.
	Log In
	Log III
	security and avoid login conflicts, always is using the "Log out" option in the upper web page.

Log out

To ensure security, log out of the IMM2 web session when you are finished and manually close any other IMM2 web browser windows that you might have open.

To log out of the web session, click **Log out** in the top upper right area of the web page. The following window will display when you have successfully logged out.



Note: The IMM2 firmware supports up to six simultaneous web sessions. To free up sessions for other users, log out of the web session when you are finished, rather than waiting on the inactivity timeout to automatically close your session. If

you leave the browser while on an IMM2 web page that automatically refreshes, your web session will not automatically close due to inactivity.

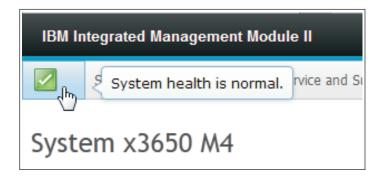
System Status tab

This section provides information for using the options under the System Status tab on the IMM2 web user interface.

The System Status page is displayed after you log into the IMM2 web user interface or when you click the System Status tab. From the System Status page, you can view the system status, active system events, and hardware health information. The following screen displays when you click the System Status tab or log into the IMM2 web interface.

IBM Integrated Manage	ment Module II		USERID Settings Log out IBM.
System Status	Events - Service and Support	Server Management IMM Management Search	
Add System Descriptive Name.		b	
System Status Power: Off System state: System pov System Information V	wer off/State unknown		
Active Events Severity Source	ce Date	Message	
Hardware Health @	Status		
	Normal		
Disks			
Disks Processors	Normal		
	Normal		

You can click on the green icon (with the check mark) in the upper left corner of the page to get a quick summary of the server health. A check mark indicates that the server is operating normally.



If a red circle or a yellow triangle icon is displayed, this indicates that an error or warning condition exists.



The red circle icon indicates that an error condition exists on the server. A yellow triangle icon indicates that a warning condition exists. When a red circle or a yellow triangle icon is displayed, the events associated with that condition are listed under the Active Events section on the System Status page, as shown in the following illustration.

Active Eve	ents			
Severity	-	Source	Date	Message
🔕 Error		System	16 Jul 2012 01:00:28.000 PM	Sensor Mezz Exp 2 Fault has transitioned to critical from a less severe state.
S Error		System	16 Jul 2012 01:00:29.000 PM	Sensor Mezz Exp 2 Fault has transitioned to critical from a less severe state.

You can add a descriptive name to the IMM2 server to assist you in identifying one IMM2 server from another. To assign a descriptive name to the IMM2 server, click the **Add System Descriptive Name...** link located below the server product name.



When you click the **Add System Descriptive Name...** link, the following window displays for you to specify a name to associate with the IMM2 server. You can change the System Descriptive Name at any time.

System St	itus Events 🗸 Service and Support 👻 Server Management 👻 IMM I	Management 👻 Search
System x36 Add System Description		
The System Status a	nd Health page provides an at-a-glance overview of the operating status of	the server in which this IMM resides. (
System Status	nd Health page provides an at-a-glance overview of the operating status of Change System Descriptive Name	the server in which this IMM resides. (
The System Status a System Status Power: On System state: Sys		×

The **System Status** section on the System Status page provides the server power state and operating state. The status that is displayed is the server state at the time the System Status page is opened, (as shown in the following illustration).

System Sta	atus@	
Power:	On	
System state:	System r	running in UEFI
System Inform	nation 🔻	Power Actions

The server can be in one of the following states:

Table 2. Server power and operating states

Server state	Description	
System power off/state unknown	The server is off.	
System on/starting UEFI	The server is powered on, but UEFI is not running.	
System running in UEFI	The server is powered on and UEFI is running.	
System stopped in UEFI	The server is powered on; UEFI has detected a problem and has stopped running.	
Booting OS or in unsupported OS	The server might be in this state for one of the following reasons:	
	• The operating system loader has started but the operating system is not running yet.	
	• The IMM2 Ethernet over USB interface is disabled.	
	• The operating system does not have the drivers loaded that support the Ethernet over USB interface.	
OS booted	The server operating system is running.	
Suspend to RAM	The server has been placed in standby or sleep state.	

The System Status page also provide tabs for **System Information**, **Power Actions**, **Remote Control**, and **Latest OS Failure Screen**.



Click the System Information tab to view information about the server.

System Information (Duick View
Name	Value
Machine Name	System x3650 M4
Machine Type	7915
Model	35Z
Serial Number	06CNZ40
JUID	E596B684B75E11E0A0B0E41F13EB0F72
Server Power	On
Server State	System running in UEFI
Total hours powered-on	117
Restart count	6
Ambient Temperature	80.60 F / 27.00 C
Enclosure Identify LED	Off Change
Check Log LED	Off

Click the **Power Actions** tab to view the actions that you can perform for full remote power control over the server with power-on, power-off, and restart actions. See "Controlling the power status of the server" on page 94 for details about how to remotely control the server power.

Click the **Remote Control** tab for information on how to control the server at the operating system level. See "Remote presence and remote control functions" on page 95 for details about the Remote Control function.

Click the **Latest OS Failure Screen** tab for information on how to capture the Latest OS Failure Screen data. See "Capturing the latest OS failure screen data" on page 124 for details about the Latest OS Failure Screen.

Under the **Hardware Health** section of the System Status page is a table with a list of the hardware components that are being monitored and their health status. The health that is displayed for a component might reflect the most critical state of the component in the Component Type column in the table. For example, a server might have several power modules installed and all of the power modules are operating normally except one. The status for the Power Modules components in the table will have a status of critical because of that one power module (as shown in the following screen).

Hardware Health 🥥	
Component Type	Status
Cooling Devices	Normal
Power Modules	🔇 Critical
Disks	Normal
Processors	Normal
Mempry	🗹 Normal
System	🔽 Normal

Each component type is a link that you can click to get more detailed information. When you click on the component type, a table listing the status for each of the individual components is displayed (as shown in the following screen).

	riteduce areadore on che	Server, clicking on a module	displays a Properties pop-up window wi
FRU Name	 Status 	Туре	Capacity (GB)
DIMM 4	Normal	DDR3	4
DIMM 9	Normal	DDR3	4
DIMM 16	Normal	DDR3	4
DIMM 21	Normal	DDR3	4

You can click on a component in the FRU Name column of the table to get additional information for that component. All active events for the component will be displayed.

	or DIMM 4
Events	Hardware Information
There are	no active events for this device
ose	

Click on the **Hardware Information** tab for detailed information about the component.

Events	Hardwa	re Information
Descriptio	n	DIMM 4
PartNumb	er	M393B5773CH0-YH
FRU Serial	Number	8634E095
Manuf Dat	e	2211
Туре		DDR3
Size		2 GB

Events tab

This section provides information for using the options under the Events tab on the IMM2 web user interface.

The options under the **Events** tab enables you to manage the Event Log history and manage Event Recipients for email and syslog notifications. The following illustration shows the options under the Events tab on the IMM2 web page.

IBM Integrated Manag	jement Mo	dule II			
System Status	Events 👻	Service and Support	•	Server Management 🗸	IMM Management 👻 🛽
	Event Log	9	Full	log history of all events	
System x3750 Add System Descriptive Nam	Event Re			l and modify E-Mail and fications	SysLog

Event log

Select **Event Log** under the Events tab to display the Event Log page. The Event Log page shows the severity for the events that are reported by the IMM2, and information about all remote access attempts and configuration changes. All events in the log are time stamped, using the IMM2 date and time settings. Some events also generate alerts, if they are configured to do so on the Event Recipients page. You can sort and filter events in the event log. The following is an illustration of the Event log window.

Curtom Ct	abue Evente	- Service and Support - Service	Management - IMM Management -	Search			
System St	acus Evenus	 Service and Support Service and Support 	Management • Imm Management •				
event Log	the sector beach	Cables WHIT screek laws and allowed and	and and Sharable law Production balance	log entries are displayed in reverse chronological order (mo		anter first). Far analy is a	and the state
eventy of the even	t is displayed al	ong with a timestamp, source and a to	ext mess more	og encres are uspayed in reverse circulological order (mos	ic receitcing	encry hist). For each log	ency, ci
Export Dele	te Events						
 Filter Events 							
		Go					
		-					
Severity	Source	Date	Event ID	Message WEB client at IP address 9.44.77.169.			
👔 Informational	Power	18 Jul 2012 02:16:39.145 PM	0x816f00091381ffff	Host Power has been turned on.			
🚹 Informational	Power	18 Jul 2012 02:16:22.086 PM	0x806f00091381ffff	Host Power has been turned off.			
👔 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:15:22.062 PM	0x4000000e00000000	Remote Login Successful. Login ID: USERID fro webguis at IP address 169.254.95.120.	r		
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:43.478 PM	0x40000160000000	ENET[CIM:ep1] DHCP-HSTN=IMM2- e41f13d90831, DN=raleigh.ibm.com, IP@=9.37.189.59, SN=255.255.240.0, GW@=9.37.176.1, DNS1@=9.0.128.50.			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:41.357 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-3 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:37.127 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-2 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚮 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:34.823 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-1 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚮 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:32.019 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet[IBM:ep2] interface is now active.			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:28.060 PM	0x4000001700000000	ENET[CIM:ep2] IP-Cfg:HstName=IMM2- e41f13d90631, IP@=169.254.95.118 .NetMsk=255.255.0.0, GW@=0.0.0.0.	1		
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:25.740 PM	0x4000003700000000	ENET[CIM:ep1] IPv6-LinkLocal:HstName=IMM2- e41f13d90631, IP@=fe80::e61f.13fffed9:0631 ,Pref=64.			
Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:23 900 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet/IBM:ep11 interface is now active.			

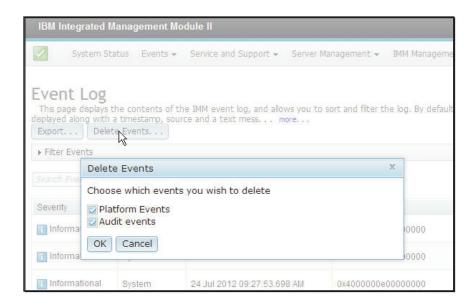
To sort and filter events in the event log, select the column heading (as shown in the following window).

Severity	Source	Date	 Event ID 	Message	
🚮 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:20:40.371 PM	0x4000002000000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Reset was caused by restoring default values.	-
🚮 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:22:49.792 PM	0x800801282101fff	Device Low Security Jmp has been added.	
🚺 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:25:24.943 PM	0x4000000100000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Network Initialization Complete.	
🔢 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:25:28:538 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet(IBM:ep1) interface is now active.	
Informational	Sustam	23 Jul 2012 03:25:30 220 PM	0x4000003700000000	ENET[CIM:ep1] IPv6-LinkLocal:HstName=IMM2- e41t13d99531_IP@=fe80:e61t13tfed9:0631_	

You can save all or save selected events in the event log to a file using the **Export** button. To select specific events, choose an event on the main Event Log page and simultaneously press the Ctrl key on your keyboard and left-click on your mouse or touchpad (as shown in the following window).

	System Status	Events 👻	Service and Support 🗸
Evo	nt Log		
		ontents of th	e IMM event log, and all
			ce and a text mess

Use the **Delete Events** button to choose the type of events you want to delete (as shown in the following window).



To select the type of event log entries that you want displayed, click **Filter Events** (as shown in the following illustration).

System Sta	tus Events	 Service and Support - Server 	Management 👻 IMM Management 👻	
eventy of the event		the IMM event log, and allows you to ng with a timestamp, source and a to		g entries are displayed in reverse chronological order (mos
 Filter Events 				
To filter the event	og entries, sele	ect one or more items from the Colun	nns, Severity, and Date categories below.	
Visible columns Service State Source Date Index Sequence # Event ID Message		Event types Error Events Warning Events Informational Events Audit Events	Date ranges to show All Dates Previous 2 hours Previous 2 d hours Previous week Previous week Specific date	
Search Events		Go		
	Source	Date	Event ID	Message Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Reset wa
🚹 Informational	System	19 Jul 2012 09:09:24.614 AM	0x400000200000000	caused by restoring default values.
🚹 Informational	System	19 Jul 2012 09:11:47.548 AM	0x800801282101ffff	Device Low Security Jmp has been added.
				Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Network

To search for specific types of events or keywords, type the type of event or keyword in the **Search Events** box; then, click **Go** (as shown in the following illustration).

System St	tatus Events	 Service and Support ✓ Server 	Management 👻 IMM Management 🔹	• Search
displayed along with		f the IMM event log, and allows you to ource and a text mess more	o sort and filter the log. By default the	log entries are displa
Severity	Source	Date	 Event ID 	Message
👔 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:32:03.588 PM	0x400000160000000	ENET[CII e41f13d9 IP@=9.37 GW@=9.
🚺 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:31:59.469 PM	0x4000001700000000	ENET[CII e41f13d9 .NetMsk=

Event recipients

Use the **Events Recipients** option under the Events tab to add and modify email and syslog notifications.

IBM Integrated Management Module II						
System Status	Events 👻	Service and Support + Server Management + IMM Management + Sea				
	Event Lo	g Full log history of all events				
System x3750 Add System Descriptive Nam	n a second nee	cipients Add and modify E-Mail and SysLog notifications				

The Event Recipients option enables you to manage who will be notified of system events. You can configure each recipient, and manage settings that apply to all event recipients. You can also generate a test event to verify the notification feature.

Click the Create button to create email and syslog notifications.



Select the **Create E-mail Notification** option to setup a target email address and choose the type of events for which you want to be notified. In addition, you can click **Advanced Settings** to select the starting index number. To include the event log in the email, select the **Include the event log contents in the e-mail body** check box. The following is an illustration of the Create E-mail Notification screen:

Create E-Mail Notification		x
Descriptive name: E-Mail address:		
Events to receive:		
Enable Critical Critical Temperature Threshold Exceeded Critical Voltage Threshold Exceeded Critical Voltage Threshold Exceeded Critical Power Failure Hard Disk Drive Failure CPU Failure Memory Failure Hardware Incompability Power redundancy failure All other critical events	Enable Attention Power redundancy warning Warning Temperature Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded CPU in degraded state Memory Warning All other attention events	Enable System Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout All other informational/system events System Power On/Off Operating System boot failure Operating System Loader watchdog timeout Predicted failure (PFA) Event (og 75% full Network change
Include the event log contents in the e-m	ail body	
Disable this notification		
 Advanced Settings 		

Select the **Create SysLog Notification** option to setup the Host name and IP Address for the SysLog collector and choose the type of events for which you want to be notified. In addition, you can click **Advanced Settings** to select the starting index number. You can also specify the port you want to use for this type of notification. The following is an illustration of the Create SysLog Notification screen:

Create SysLog Notification		х
Descriptive name: Host name or IP address of the SysLog colle	ctor: Port:	
Events to receive:		
Enable Critical Critical Temperature Threshold Exceeded Critical Yoltage Threshold Exceeded Critical Power Failure Hard Disk Drive Failure Fan Failure CPU Failure Memory Failure Hardware Incompatibility Power redundancy failure All other critical events	Enable Attention Power redundancy warning Warning 'Remporature Threshold Exceeded Warning 'Notage Threshold Exceeded Non-critical Fan events CPU in degraded state Memory, Warning All other attention events	Enable System Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout: All other informational/system events System Power Gn/Off Operating System boot failure Operating System Loader watchdog timeout: Predicted failure (FFA) Event log 75% full Network change
Disable this notification Advanced Settings		
OK Cancel		

Select the **Generate Test Event** button to send a test email to a selected email target (as shown in the following illustration).



Select the **Global Settings** button to set a limit in which to retry the event notification, the delay (in minutes) between event notification entries, and the delay (in minutes) between attempts (as shown in the following illustration).

Event Notification Global Settings	x
These settings will apply to all event notifications.	
Retry limit: 5 - Delay between entries (minutes): 0.5 -	
Delay between attempts (minutes):	

If you want to remove an email or syslog notification target, select the **Delete** button. The following window displays:

	ement Module II Events - Service and Si	upport 👻 Server Manage	ment 👻 IMM Manage	ement 👻 Sea
ame for that particular rec	summary list of all remote a		in the Name column	to configure ir
Name	Notification Method	Events to Receive	Status	
Email Subject	E-Mail	None	Enabled	
Email2 Subject	E-Mail	None	Enabled	
Confi	rm Event Notification D	Deletion	x	
	Do you want to delet	e the notification 'Ema	il Subject' ?	

Service and support tab

This section provides information for using the options under the Service and Support tab on the IMM2 web user interface page.

Download service data

Use the **Download Service Data** option under the Service and Support tab to collect information and create a compressed file about the server that you can send to IBM Support to assist in problem determination.



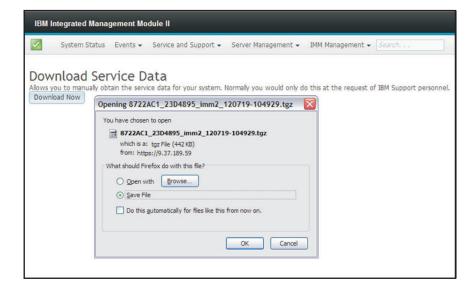
Click the **Download Now** button to download the service and support data (as shown in the following illustration).



The process for collecting the data starts. The process takes a few minutes to generate the service data that you can then save to a file. A progress window displays indicating that the data is being generated.



When the process is complete, the following window displays prompting you for the location in which to save the generated file.



Server management tab

This section provides information about the options under the Server Management tab on the IMM2 web user interface home page.

The options under the Server Management tab enable you to view information about the server firmware status and control, remote control access, server properties status and control, server power actions, cooling devices, power modules, disks, memory, processors, server time-outs, PXE network boot, and latest OS failure screen (as shown in the following screen).

System Stat	us Events - Service	and Support -	Server Management + IMM	Management 👻 Search	
System x3750 M4 Add system Description Name The System Status and Health page provides an at-a-glance ove System Status On Source: On System state: OS booted		Server Firmware	View firmware levels and update firmware		
		Remote Control	Allows you access into the operating system of your system		
		Server Properties	Various properties and settings related to your system	ormation and actions are co-located on this one page.	
		Server Power Actions	Power actions such as power on, power off, and restart		
		Cooling Devices	Cooling devices installed in your system		
System Information - Power Actions - Remote Contro		Power Modules	Power modules installed in your system		
Active Events		Disks	Hard disk drives installed directly in your system		
Severity Source Date					
Hardware Health Component Type Status		Memory	RAM installed in your system		
		Processors	Physical CPUs installed in your system		
Cooling Devices	🖾 Normal		Server Timeouts	Configure watchdogs, etc.	
Power Modules	Normal		PXE Network Boot	Settings for how your system performs boot from PXE server	
Disks	Normal				
Processors	rocessors 🛛 Normal		Latest OS Failure Screen	Windows systems only. View an image of the most recent failure screen.	
Memory	Normal				_
System	Normal				

Server firmware

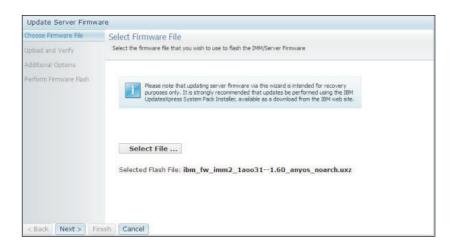
Select the **Server Firmware** option under the Server Management tab to view the levels of firmware that are installed on the server and to apply firmware updates. The following Server Firmware screen displays the server firmware levels and enables you to update the DSA, IMM2, and UEFI firmware.

System Sta	tus	Events - Service	and Support - Server Man	igement - IMM Management - Search		
A System Sta	cus	Events · Service	and Support + Server Ham	genene · Jun nanagemene · Locaron · ·		
erver Firm						
low the firmware lev Update Firmware		various server comp	ponents, including the IMM its	ef.		
Firmware Type		Version	Build	Release Date		
DSA	- 1	9.23	DSYTA3C	10 Jul 2012		
IMM2 (Active)		1.60	1A0031L	18 Jul 2012		
IMM2 (Primary)		1.60	1A0031L	18 Jul 2012		
MM2 (Backup)		1.53	1A0029Z	16 Jul 2012		
		1.10	KOE115-US	12 Jul 2012		
JEFI (Active)		1.10	KOE115-US	12 Jul 2012		
UEFI (Active) UEFI (Primary)						

The current versions of firmware for IMM2, UEFI, and DSA is displayed, including the active, primary, and backup versions.

To update the firmware, select the **Update Firmware...** button. The Select Firmware screen displays. You can click **Cancel** and return to the previous Server Firmware screen or click on the **Select File...** button to select the firmware file that you want to use to flash the server firmware.

Note: Before you click on the Select File... button, read the warning displayed in the window prompt before you continue.



When you click on the Select File... button, the File Upload window displays, which allows you to browse to the desired file.

System Status	Update Server Firmwa	re						
	Choose Firmware File	Select Firmware File						
Server Firmw show the firmware levels Update Firmware	Upload and Verify Additional Options	Select the firmware file that you u	wish to use to flash the IN	M/Server Firmware				
Finnware Type DSA	. Perform Firmware Pash	Please note that upo purposes only. It is n	lating server firmware vie strongly recommended th em Pack Installer, availabl	this wizard is interv at updates be perfo	ded for recovery rmed using the IBM			
IMM2 (Active)		updates/press Syst	em Pack Instaker, avaliab	e as a download no	in the tom web site.			
IMM2 (Primary)								
IMM2 (Backup)			File Upload					2 🗙
UEFI (Active)		Select File	Look in	System x375	50-fw-updates	v 0	1 🗈 🖽 -	
UEFI (Primary) UEFI (Backup)		Select File		-	_1aoo311.60_anyos_		us	
	<back next=""> Fir</back>	ish Cancel	Documents Desktop My Documents					
			My Computer	File name: Files of type:	lbm_fw_imm2_1aco3	1-1.60_anyos_noarc	th wat 💌 🚺	Open

After you navigate to the file that you want to select, click the **Open** button, you are returned to the Select Firmware File screen with the selected file displayed (as shown in the following screen).

Update Server Firmv	Nare	
Choose Firmware File	Select Firmware File	
Upload and Verify	Select the firmware file that you wish to use to flash the IMM/Server Firmware	
Additional Options		
Perform Firmware Pash	Please note that updating server firmware via this wizard is intended for recovery purposes only. It is strongly recommended that updates be performed using the IBM Updates/press System Pack Installer, available as a download from the IBM web site.	
	Select File	
	Selected Flash File: ibm_fw_imm2_1aoo311.60_anyos_noarch.uxz	
< Back Next > F	inish Cancel	

Click the **Next** > button to begin the upload and verify process on the selected file (as shown in the following screen). A progress meter will be displayed as the file is being uploaded and verified.

Update Server Firmwa	are
Choose Firmware File	Upload and Verify
Upload and Verify	The firmware file is being uploaded. You will have an opportunity to verify it is the correct file prior to the flashing procedure.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Fash	Upload and Verify Firmware File 15% Uploading firmware file 'ibm_fw_imm2_laoo311.60_anyos_noarch.uxz'
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel

A status window appears (as shown in the following screen) so you can verify that the file you selected to update is the correct file. The screen will have information regarding the type of firmware file that is to be updated, such as DSA, IMM2, or UEFI. If the information is correct, click the **Next** > button. If you want to redo any of the selections, click the **< Back** button.

Update Server Firmwa	are
Choose Firmware File	Upload and Verify
Upload and Venify	The firmware file is being uploaded. You will have an opportunity to verify it is the correct file prior to the flashing procedure.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flash	
	Successful upload.
	The firmware image ibm_fw_imm2_laoo311.60_anyos_noarch.uxz' was successfully uploaded and verified.
	The uploaded file was detected as a IMM firmware file with Build ID 1AOO31L. The current Build Din the primary area is 1AOO31L. The current Build Din the backup area is 1AOO232.
	If this is correct, click the Next button to continue the firmware update procedure.
< Back Next > Fi	nish Cancel

When you click the Next > button, a set of "Additional Options" are displayed as shown in the following screen.

Update Server Firmwa	are
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Fash	Action 1 <choose action=""> + Add action</choose>
< Back Next > Fin	Cancel

The drop-down menu under Action 1 (shown in the following screen) gives you the choice to Update the primary bank (default action) or Update the backup bank.

 2) Choose Firmware File 2) Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.	
Additional Options		
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 1 <choose action=""></choose>	
	<choose action=""></choose>	
	Update the primary bank (default action) Update the backup bank	

After you select an action, you are returned to the previous screen to allow the additional requested action (as shown in the following screen).

Update Server Firmwa	are
Choose Firmware File	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Pash	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action) - 🗵
< Back Next > Fi	hish Cancel

When the action is loaded, the selected action and a new **Action 2** drop-down menu is displayed (as shown in the following screen).

Note: To remove an action, click the **X** to the right of the action to start the action process again.

Update Server Firmwa	are :
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Fash	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action) v 🗵 Action 2 <choose action=""> v 🖾 Add action</choose>
< Back Next > Fir	hish Cancel

The previous screen shows that under Action 1, the primary bank was selected to be updated. You can also select to update the backup bank under Action 2 (as shown in the following screen). Both the primary bank and the backup bank will be updated at the same time when you click **Next** >.

Update Server Firmware	
Choose Firmware File	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action) * X Action 2 Update the backup bank * X Add action
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel

A progress meter is displayed that shows the progress of the firmware update (as shown in the following screen).

Update Server Firmwa	are	
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Perform Firmware Flash >The firmware is being flashed now.	
Additional Options	Action 1 of 2: 'Update the primary bank (default action)'	
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 2 of 2: 'Update the backup bank'	
	27%	
-		
< Back Next > Fir	inish Cancel	

When the firmware update is completed successfully, the following screen is displayed. Select **Finish** to return to the main Update Server Firmware screen.



If you had chosen no actions (as shown in the following screen), the default would be to load the primary bank only.

Update Server Firmwa	are
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 1
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel

A progress meter window displays that indicates the firmware update progress, then, a **Firmware update success** window will display (as shown in the following screens):

Update Server Firmwa	are
 ☑ Choose Firmware File ☑ Upload and Verify 	Perform Firmware Flash >The firmware is being flashed now.
Additional Options	Action 1 of 1: 'Default Firmware Flash'
Perform Firmware Flash	50%
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel

Update Server Firmw	are
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify Additional Options 	Perform Firmware Flash >The firmware is being flashed now.
Perform Firmware Flash	Firmware update success. The firmware update procedure completed successfully. Click Finish to dose this wizard. If the update included a flash of the IMM primary partition, it will also be necessary to Restart the IMM for the IMM update to take effect. If the update included a flash of the UEFF firmware it will also be necessary to Restart the OS for the update to take effect.
< Back Next > Fi	nish Cancel

Remote control

This section provides information about the remote control feature.

The ActiveX client and Java client are graphical remote consoles that allow you to remotely view the server video display and interact with it using the client keyboard and mouse.

Notes:

- The ActiveX client is only available with the Internet Explorer browser.
- To use the Java client, the Java Plug-in 1.5 or later release is required.
- The Java client is compatible with the IBM Java 6 SR9 FP2 or later release.

The remote control feature consist of two separate windows:

Video Viewer

The Video Viewer window uses a remote console for remote systems management. A remote console is an interactive graphical user interface (GUI)

display of the server viewed on your computer. Your monitor displays exactly what is on the server console and you have keyboard and mouse control of the console.

• Virtual Media Session

The Virtual Media Session window list all of the drives on the client that can be mapped as remote drives and allows you to map ISO and diskette image files as virtual drives. Each mapped drive can be marked as read-only. The CD, DVD drives, and ISO images are always read-only. The Virtual Media Session window is accessed from the Tools menu bar of the Video Viewer window.

Notes:

- The Virtual Media Session can only be used by one remote control session client at a time.
- If the ActiveX client is used, a parent window will open and that window must remain open until the remote session is complete.

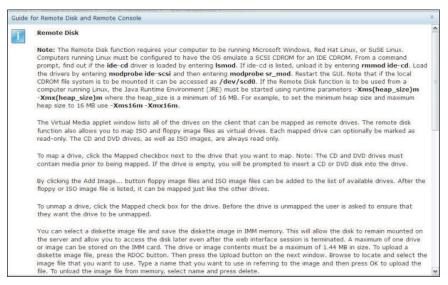
To remotely access a server console, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2, (see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8 for additional information).
- 2. Access the Remote Control page by selecting one of the following menu choices:
 - Click Remote Control from the Server Management tab.
 - Click **Remote Control...** on the System Status page.

The Remote Control page opens as shown in the following illustration.

	ent Module II	ilita e ante a ante	and addition and	and and a	USERID	Settings Log out	IBN
System Status Ev	rents - Service and Support -	Server Management 🗸	IMM Management 🗸	Search			
	ver at the operating system level. A he Remote Console window, "Tool					ole functionality. The F	emote D
Use the ActiveX Client							
🛛 Use the Java Client 🎯	k						
Your current browser 3	Java version (1.6.0.31) is supported for	use with remote control.					
Allow others to request my	remote session disconnect						
	le-user mode						
Start remote control in singl	ie aber meae						
Start remote control in singl Gives you exclusive access due							
	iring the remote session.						
Gives you exclusive access due Start remote control in multi	iring the remote session.	ve.					
Gives you exclusive access due Start remote control in multi	ring the remote session. I-user mode note sessions while your session is activ	ие.		k			
Gives you exclusive access du Start remote control in multi Allows other users to start rem Remote Control Sess	ring the remote session. I-user mode note sessions while your session is activ		ilable sessions.	k		Re	fresh
Gives you exclusive access du Start remote control in multi Allows other users to start rem Remote Control Sess	ring the remote session. Fuser mode note sessions while your session is activ sion in Progress			k:		Re Timeou	

3. You can click the **Guide for Remote Disk and Remote Console** link to access additional information. The following illustration shows the Guide for Remote Disk and Remote Console window.



- a. Click **Close** to exit from the Guide for Remote Disk and Remote Console window.
- 4. Select one of the following graphical remote console choices:
 - To use the Internet Explorer as your browser, select Use the ActiveX Client.
 - To use the Java client, select **Use the Java Client** as shown in the following illustration.

					i anti anti a	USERID	Settings	Log out	IEN
System Sta	tus Events -	Service and Support \bullet	Server Management -	IMM Management +					
Allows you to contro unctionality is launch Guide for Remote Dis	I the server at the ed from the Rem	e operating system level. A ote Console window, "Tool Co nsole	new window will appear i s" drop-down menu. (Note	that provides access to that the Remote Disk f	the Remote Disk and F unction does not π	Remote Cons nore	ole function	nality. The Re	emote D
Use the ActiveX C	lient 🎱								
Use the Java Clier	nt 🤍	6.3							
Your current	browser Java vers	sion (1.6.0.31) is supported for	use with remote control.						
Allow others to rec	quest my remote	session disconnect 🦉							
Allow others to rec Start remote contro									
	ol in single-user	mode							
Start remote contro	ol in single-user access during the r	mode							
Start remote contro Gives you exclusive Start remote contro	ol in single-user access during the i	mode	ve.						
Start remote contro Gives you exclusive Start remote contro	ol in single-user access during the r ol in multi-user n o start remote sess	mode remote session. mode sons while your session is activ	re.		k				
Start remote contro Gives you exclusive Start remote contro Allows other users t Remote Contro	ol in single-user access during the r ol in multi-user n o start remote sess of Session in	mode remote session. mode sons while your session is activ		illable sessions.	k			Ref	resh
Start remote contro Gives you exclusive Start remote contro Allows other users t Remote Contro	ol in single-user access during the r ol in multi-user n o start remote sess of Session in	mode remote session. mode sions while your session is active n Progress			k:			Ref	

Notes:

- If you are not using the Internet Explorer browser, only the Java client can be selected.
- The ActiveX and Java clients have identical functionality.
- A status line will be displayed indicating whether your client is supported. The following window opens. It shows the information that the browser (for example, the Firefox browser) will use to open the Viewer file.

Remote Control Allows you to control the server at the operating s unctionality is launched from the Remote Console	Opening viewer(192.168.5.36@443@0@135348798985 × bre
Guide for Remote Disk and Remote Console	You have chosen to open
Use the ActiveX Client @	
⊙ Use the Java Client ∅	which is a: JNLP file (3.0 KB) from: https://192.168.5.36
Your current browser Java version (1.6.0.31) i	What should Firefox do with this file?
Encrypt disk and KVM data during transmission	Open with Browse Save File
Allow others to request my remote session disc	Do this automatically for files like this from now on.
Start remote control in single-user mode	
Gives you exclusive access during the remote session	Cancel
Start remote control in multi-user mode	

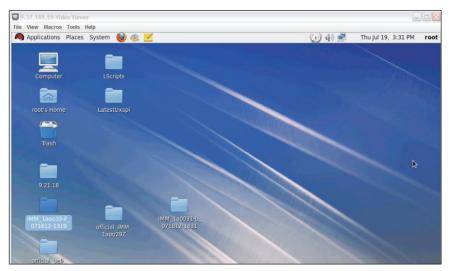
5. After the browser downloads and opens the Viewer file, a confirmation window opens with a warning about the website certificate verification (as shown in the following illustration). Click **Yes** to accept the certificate.

viewer(192.168.5.3p@U Failed — 192.168.5.36	SERID@0@0@0@0) 04:56 PM	USERID S	ettings Log out IBM.
viewer(192.168.5.3p@U 3.0 KB — 192.168.5.36	Warning - Security The web site's certificate cannot be	×	
viewer(192.168.5.3p@U Failed — 192.168.5.36	verified. Do you want to continue?	ote Console f	unctionality. The Remote Disk
viewer(192.168.5.3p@U 3.0 KB — 192.168.5.36	Name: 192.168,5.36 Publisher: UNKNOWN		,
Clear List	□ Always trust content from this publisher.	Yes No	
Encrypt disk and KVM data during transm	The certificate cannot be verified by a trusted source.	More Information	
Allow others to request my remote session	n disconnect 🧐		
Start remote control in single-user mode Gives you exclusive access during the remote s	session.		
Start remote control in multi-user mode Allows other users to start remote sessions wh	ile your session is active.		

- 6. To control the server remotely, select one of the following menu choices:
 - To have exclusive remote access during your session, click **Start remote control in single User mode**.
 - To allow others to have remote console access during your session, click **Start remote control in multi user mode**.

Note: If the **Encrypt disk and KVM data during transmission** checkbox is selected before the Video Viewer window is opened, the disk data is encrypted with ADES encryption during the session.

The Video Viewer window opens as shown in the following illustration. This window provides access to the Remote Console functionality.



7. Close the Video Viewer and the Virtual Media Session windows when you are finished using the Remote Control feature.

Notes:

- The Video Viewer will automatically close the Virtual Media Session window.
- Do *not* close the Virtual Media Session window if a remote disk is currently mapped. See "Remote disk" on page 105 for instructions about closing and unmapping a remote disk.
- If you have mouse or keyboard problems when you use the remote control functionality, see the help that is available from the Remote Control page in the web interface.
- If you use the remote console to change settings for the IMM2 in the Setup utility program, the server might restart the IMM2. You will lose the remote console and the login session. After a short delay you can log in to the IMM2 again with a new session, start the remote console again, and exit the Setup utility program.

Important: The IMM2 uses a Java applet or an ActiveX applet to perform the remote presence function. When the IMM2 is updated to the latest firmware level, the Java applet and the ActiveX applet are also updated to the latest level. By default, Java caches (stores locally) applets that were previously used. After a flash update of the IMM2 firmware, the Java applet that the server uses might not be at the latest level.

To correct this problem, turn off caching. The method used will vary based on the platform and Java version. The following steps are for Oracle Java 1.5 on Windows:

- 1. Click Start -> Settings -> Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Java Plug-in 1.5. The Java Plug-in Control Panel window opens.
- 3. Click the Cache tab.
- 4. Choose one of the following options:
 - Clear the **Enable Caching** check box so that Java caching is always disabled.
 - Click **Clear Caching**. If you choose this option, you must click **Clear Caching** after each IMM2 firmware update.

For more information about updating IMM2 firmware, see "Updating the server firmware" on page 107.

For more information about the remote control feature, see "Remote presence and remote control functions" on page 95.

Server properties

Select the **Server Properties** option under the Server Management tab and the following window displays. This option enables you to set various parameters to help identify the system. This includes a descriptive name, contact person, location, and so on. The information that you enter in these fields will take effect when you click **Apply**. To clear the information that was typed in the fields since the last time you applied changes, click **Reset**.

IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events • Service and Support • Server Management • IMM Management • Search			
Server Properties various progentes, status and settings related to your system. Acoby Reset			
General Settings LEDs Hardware Information Environmentals Hardware Activity			
General Settings Provide information which identifies this system to operations and support personnel. System descriptive name: Contact person: Location (site, geographical coordinates, etc); Room ID: Rack ID; Rack ID;			
Lowest unit of system: U hept of system: 0			

In the following window, you can specify the **Lowest unit of the system**. The **Lowest unit of the system** field requires a connection to the management module (for example the Advanced Management Module or CMM).

IBM Integrated Management Module II		USERID Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events - Service and Support -	Server Management + IMM Management + Search		
Server Properties Vanous properties, status and settings related to your system. Appy Reset			
General Settings LEDs Hardware Information Envir	onmentals Hardware Activity		
General Settings Provide information which identifies this system to operations an System description mane: Contact person: Co	δ support personnel.		

To view the LEDs in the system, click the **LED** tab. The following window is displayed.

3M Integrated M	anagement Mo	dule II								USERID	Settings	Log out	1
System Sta	tus Events •	Service and Support	- Server Managem	ent 🕶	IMM Managemer	t • Search		1					
erver Prop ous properties, sta pply Reset		related to your system											
eneral Settings	LEDs Har	dware Information	nvironmentals Har	dware Ad	tivity								
EDs													
ver(s).		he LEDs on the server's	chassis and front pa	nei. It als	o provides the al	plity to view the s	catus of	those LEDs that	are internal to	the server with	ut naving to	remove the s	server
closure Identify Li eck Log LED: Off	D:Off Change.												
IECK LOG LED: Off													
lame -	Color	Status											
10Gbit Slot	Yellow	0 off											
Battery	Yellow	Ωoπ											
BMC Heartbeat	Green	🖓 Blink											
Check Log	Yellow	0 off											
CNEG	Yellow	0 off											
SPU	Yellow	0 off											
CPU 1	Yellow	Ω oπ											
CPU 2	Yellow	Off											
CPU 3	Yellow	Off											
CPU 4	Yellow	V off											
CPU Tray Err	Yellow	2 off											
DASD	Yellow	♥ off											

To view system information, system component information, and network hardware information, click the **Hardware Information** tab. Select the appropriate tab within the Hardware Information tab to view various VPD information. The **System Information** tab provides information such as the machine name, serial number, and model. The following illustration shows the System Information window.

iom integrated manag	ement Module II						USERID	Settings	Log out	IBM
System Status	Events - Service and Supp	ort 👻 Server Mana	gement 👻 IMM N	lanagement 🖣	• Search					
arious properties, status ar Apply Reset	ies nd settings related to your sys	tem.								
General Settings	Ds Hardware Information	Environmentals	Hardware Activity							
Hardware Info	ormation									
This section lists vital prod	uct data (VPD) on a system, o	omponent and netw	ork basis.							
System Information Sy	stem Component Information	Network Hardware	1							
Casherin										
Name	Value									
Name Machine Name		x3750 M4								
		x3750 M4								
Machine Name	System	x3750 M4								
Machine Name Machine Type	System 8722									
Machine Name Machine Type Model	System 8722 AC1 23D48		41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number	System 8722 AC1 23D48	95	41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number UUID	System 8722 AC1 23D48 9AC5F	95 54841D211E192CAE	41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number UUID Server Power	System 8722 AC1 23D48 9AC5F 0n 0S boo	95 54841D211E192CAE	41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number UUID Server Power Server State	System 8722 AC1 23D48 9AC5F 0n 0S boo	95 54841D211E192CAE	41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number UUID Server Power Server Power Server State Total hours powered-on	System 8722 AC1 23D48 9AC5F On OS boo 5	95 54841D211E192CAE	41F13DA09AA							
Machine Name Machine Type Model Serial Number UUID Server Power Server State Total hours powered-on Restart count	System 8722 AC1 23D48 9AC5F On OS boo 5	95 54841D211E192CAE ted /26.00 C	41F13DA09AA							

The status of the **Enclosure Identify LED** can be viewed and changed from System Information window. To change the **Enclosure Identify LED**, click the **Change...** link. The following window is displayed.

Note: The Location LED is on the front of the Light Path panel.

Choose the desired state for the Enclosure Identify LED The Location LED is on the front of the Light Path panel. It is called Identify in the LED table.
Note: The system might need to be powered on for the Location LE to turn on or blink.
Current state: Off
Turn Off
Turn On Blink

Select the **System Component Information** tab to view component information. Component information includes the FRU Name, Serial Number, and Manufacturer ID. The following illustration shows the information that you will see when you click the System Component Information tab.

Gerver Prope rious properties, status Apply Reset			r system.				
General Settings	EDs	Hardware Inform	ation Environmentals	Hardware Activity			
FRU Name CPU 1		rial Number t Available	Manufacturer ID Intel(R) Corporation				
		10RW1AZ03E	USIS				
DASD Backplane 1							
DASD Backplane 1 DIMM 1		3A41C7	Samsung				
the state of the state of the set	873	3A41C7 3A3F12	Samsung Samsung				

Select the **Network Hardware** tab to view the network hardware information. Network hardware information includes the Host Ethernet MAC Address Number and MAC Address. The following illustration shows the information that you will see when you click the Network Hardware tab.

System Status Events ★ Se	rvice and Supp	ort 👻 Server Man	agement 👻 IMM Ma	nagement +		
Gerver Properties urious properties, status and settings relat Apply Reset	ed to your syste	m.				
General Settings LEDs Hardwa	are Information	Environmentals	Hardware Activity			
Hardware Information This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone	on a system, co					
This section lists vital product data (VPD)	on a system, co nt Information					
This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone Host Ethernet MAC Address Number Host Ethernet MAC Address 1	on a system, co nt Information	Network Hardware Address 3:FC:3C:13:D0				
This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone Host Ethernet MAC Address Number Host Ethernet MAC Address 1 Host Ethernet MAC Address 2	on a system, co nt Information	Network Hardware Address				
This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone Host Ethernet MAC Address Number Host Ethernet MAC Address 1 Host Ethernet MAC Address 2 Host Ethernet MAC Address 3	on a system, co nt Information MAC 5C:F3 5C:F3 5C:F3	Network Hardware Address 3:FC:3C:13:D0 3:FC:3C:13:D1 3:FC:3C:13:D2				
This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone Host Ethernet MAC Address Number Host Ethernet MAC Address 1 Host Ethernet MAC Address 2	on a system, co nt Information MAC 5C:F3 5C:F3 5C:F3	Address 3:FC:3C:13:D0 3:FC:3C:13:D1				
This section lists vital product data (VPD) System Information System Compone Host Ethernet MAC Address Number Host Ethernet MAC Address 1 Host Ethernet MAC Address 2 Host Ethernet MAC Address 3	on a system, co nt Information MAC 5C:F3 5C:F3 5C:F3	Network Hardware Address 3:FC:3C:13:D0 3:FC:3C:13:D1 3:FC:3C:13:D2				

Select the **Environmentals** tab on the Server Properties page to view the voltages and temperatures of the hardware components in the system. The following window is displayed. The **Status** column in the table shows normal activity or problem areas in the server.

	Management Mod	ule li						USERID	Settings Log out	IBM
System S	atus Events •	Service and Support	 Server Mana 	agement 👻 IMM Manager	ment + Search					
D										
erver Pro		elated to your system								
pply Reset	active and accordings i									
Seneral Settings	LEDs Hard	ware Information	Environmentals	Hardware Activity						
				The other of correct						
nvironm	entals									
is section deals	s the current units	a and temperature o	and in as for variou	s hardware components in	this outtom All units on re-	adinas ara disabuad in	Vote All temporate	ico roadinge ar	a displayed in degraps	
as section display	is the current voltage	e and temperature n	eadings for variou	is hardware components in	this system. All voltage re	adings are displayed in	Volts. All temperatu	ire readings an	e displayed in degrees	
hrenheit or degi	ees Celsius dependir	ng on your location.								
oltages										
Chan Threehal										
	Value (Volts)	Status	Fatal Low		Non-critical Lower Threshold	Non-critical Upper Threshold	Critical Upper Threshold	Fatal Upp Threshol		
Source		Status				Non-critical Upper Threshold N/A				
Source Planar 3.3V	Value (Volts)		Threshol	d Threshold	Lower Threshold	Upper Threshold	Threshold	Threshol		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V	Value (Volts) 3.39	Normal	Threshol N/A	d Threshold 3.04	Lower Threshold N/A	Upper Threshold N/A	Threshold 3.56	Threshol N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08	 Normal Normal 	Threshol N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44	Lower Threshold N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53	Threshol N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26 3.20	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26 3.20	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26 3.20 25	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A		
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT C emperature e Show Threshol	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26 3.20 25	Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96 2.00 ver Critical Lower	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23	Threshol N/A N/A N/A	d	
Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT Comperature Show Threshol Source	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.26 3.20	 Normal Normal Normal Normal Normal 	Threshol N/A N/A N/A N/A Fatal Low	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.96 2.00 ver Critical Lower	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A 2.27 Non-critical	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23 N/A Critical Upper	Threshol N/A N/A N/A N/A Fatal Upp	d	
Show Threshol Source Planar 3.3V Planar 5V Planar 12V Planar VBAT Comperature Show Threshol Source Ambient Temp PCI Riser Temp	Value (Volts) 3.39 5.08 12.28 3.20 Value (* F)	Normal Normal Normal Normal	Threshol N/A N/A N/A N/A Fatal Low Threshol	d Threshold 3.04 4.44 10.95 2.00 ver Critical Lower Threshold	Lower Threshold N/A N/A N/A 2.27 Non-critical Lower Threshold	Upper Threshold N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A	Threshold 3.56 5.53 13.23 N/A Critical Upper Threshold	Threshol N/A N/A N/A N/A N/A Fatal Upp Threshol	d	

The **Hardware Activity** tab on the Server Properties page provides a history of the hardware that has been added or removed from the system. The following illustration shows the information that you will see when you click the Hardware Activity tab.

iom integrated man	agement Module II						USERID	Settings Log out	IB
System Statu	s Events + Service and	d Support 👻 Server Mana	gement 👻 IMM Man	agement 👻 [Search. , .					
Apply Reset	s and settings related to yo								
		nation Environmentals	Hardware Activity						
Hardware A	ctivity								
				or removed from the system.					
FRU Name									
rito Name	Serial Number	Manufacturer ID	Action	Time of Action	-				
CPU/DIMM Tray	Serial Number Y135BG1CG00R	Manufacturer ID CLCN	Action BP Added	Time of Action 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM	•				
					•				
CPU/DIMM Tray	Y1358G1CG00R	CLCN	SP Added	19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM	•				
CPU/DIMM Tray Power Supply 1	Y135BG1CG00R K10511BE086	CLCN Detta	Added	19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM	•				
CPU/DIMM Tray Power Supply 1 Power Supply 2	Y135BG1CG00R K10511BE086 K10511BE00F	CLCN Delta Delta	Added & Added	19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM	•				
CPU/DIMM Tray Power Supply 1 Power Supply 2 SAS Backplane 1	Y135BG1CG00R K10511BE086 K10511BE00F Y011US15G98C	CLCN Detta Detta MOLX	Added Added Added Added	19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM					
CPU/DIMM Tray Power Supply 1 Power Supply 2 SAS Backplane 1 CPU 1	Y135BG1CG00R K10511BE086 K10511BE00F Y011US15G98C Not Available	CLCN Detta Detta MOLX Intel(R) Corporation	Added PAdded PAdded PAdded PAdded	19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM 19 Jul 2012 09:12 AM					

Server power actions

This section provides information about the Server Power Actions option under the Server Management tab on the IMM2 web interface home page.

Select the **Server Power Actions** option under the Server Management tab to view a list of actions that you can use to control system power. The following is an illustration of the Server Power Actions screen.

IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events - Service and Support - Server Management - IMM Management - Search,			
Server Actions			
Current server power state: ON			
Actions			
Power On Server Immediately			
Power On Server at Specified Date and Time			
Power Off Server Immediately			
Shut down OS and then Power Off Server			
Shut down OS and then Restart Server			
Restart the Server Immediately			
Restart the Server with Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI)			
Schedule Daily/Weekly Power and Restart Actions			

You can choose to power the server on immediately or at a scheduled time. You can also choose to shut down and restart the operating system. For more information about controlling the server power, see, "Controlling the power status of the server" on page 94.

Disks

Select the **Disks** option under the Server Management tab to view the hard disk drives in the system. The following screen is displayed. Click on a hard disk drive to view the events associated with the hard disk drive.

IBM Integrated	Nanagement Module II	USERID Settings	Log out IB
System S	atus Events - Service and Support	Server Management IMM Management Search	
	es in the system. Click on a drive to see a Status	active events.	
Disk 0	Normal		
Disk 1	Normal		

Memory

Select the **Memory** option under the Server Management tab to view information about the memory modules installed in the system. The following screen is displayed. Each memory module is displayed in the table as a link that you can click to get more detailed information about the memory module. The table also displays the status of the DIMM, DIMM type, and DIMM capacity.

Note: If you remove or replace a DIMM, you must restart the system to view the updated DIMM information for the changes that you made to the system DIMMs.

IBM Integrated	Management Module	1				USERID	Settings Log out	I
System 5	Status Events - Sen	vice and Support 👻 Server	Management 👻 IMM Management 👻	Search,	1			
Memory Isplay the memory	r modules available on the	server. Clicking on a module	displays a Properties pop-up window wit	h 2 tabs: Events, H	W Info. If you remove or re	place DIMMs, the server	needs to be powered o	on at le
FRU Name	 Status 	v the correct DIMM informati Type	Capacity (GB)					
DIMM 1	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 2	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 3	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 4	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 5	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 6	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 7	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 8	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 9	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 10	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 11	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 12	Normal	DDR3	8					
DIMM 13	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 14	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 15	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 16	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 17	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 18	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 19	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 20	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 21	Normal	DDR3	4					

Click on a **DIMM** link in the table to view any active events and more information about the component (as shown in the following screen).

System St.	tatus Events x Serv	ice and Support + Server I	Management 👻 IMM Manageme	nt + Snavh				
Solay the memory r nice after the remove FRU Name	val/replacement to show		dsplays a Properties pop-up windo n.	w with 2 tabs: Events, HW Info. If y	ou remove or replace DIMMs, the ser	ver needs to b	e powered or	n at least
DIMM 1	Properties for E)IMM 3				×		
DIMM 2 DIMM 3	Events 1	Hardware Information						
DIMM 4	There are no	active events for this de	vice					
DHMM 5	Close							
DIMM 6	Close							
DIMM 7								
DHMM 8								
DIMM 9								
DIMM 10								
DIMM 11								
HMM 12								
DIMM 13								
BMM 14								
DIMM 15								
DIMM 16	Normai	DDR3	4					
DIMM 17	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 18	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 19	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 20	Normal	DDR3	4					
DIMM 21	Normal	DDR3	4					

Click on the **Hardware Information** tab to view details about the component such as the description, part number, FRU serial number, manufacturing date (week/year), type (for example, DDR3), and size in gigabytes (as shown in the following screen).

IBM Integrate	d Management Module II				USERID Setting		
System	Status Events + Servic	e and Support + Server I	tanagement 👻 IMM Management	 Field 			
Memory							
Display the memo	ry modules available on the s moval/replacement to show t	ervet. Clicking on a module i the correct DIMM informatio	Isplays a Properties pop-up window 9.	with 2 tabs: Events, HW Info. If you remove or	replace DIBHMs, the server needs to	be powered o	in at least
FRU Name	* Properties for DI	MM 3			>		
DIMM 1							
DIMM 2	Events H	ardware Information					
DIMII 3	Description	DIMM 3					
DIMM 4	PartNumber	HMT31GR7BFR4/	-H9				
DHMM 5	FRU Serial Nu Manuf Date	mber 1855302B 3611					
DIMM 6	Type	DDR3					
DIMM 7	Size	8 GB					
DIMM 8 DIMM 9	Close						
DIMM 10	CONTEN						
DIMM 10							
DIMM 12							
DIMM 13							
DIMM 14							
DIMM 15							
DIMM 16	Normal		4				
DIMM 17	Normal	DDR3	4				
DIMM 18	Normal		4				
DIMM 19	Normal	DDR3	4				
DIMM 20	Normal	DDR3	4				
DIMM 21	Normal	DDR3	4				

Processors

Select the **Processors** option under the Server Management tab to view information about the microprocessors that are installed in the system. The following screen is displayed.

IBM Integrated	Management Modul	le II	USERID Settings Log o	ut IBM.
System S	tatus Events + S	ervice and Support - Server M	nagement • IMM Management • Search	
CPUs Display the processo FRU Name	ors available on the sen	ver. Clicking on a CPU displays a Pr Clock speed (GHz)	operties pop-up window with 2 tabs: Events, HW Info.	
CPU 1 Status	Normal	2.20		
CPU 2 Status	Normal	2.20		
CPU 3 Status	Normal	2.20		
CPU 4 Status	Normal	2.20		

Click on a **CPU** link in the table to view any active events and more information about the component (as shown in the following screen).

			USERID Settings Log ou	e IBM.
System	Status Ever	its • Service and Support • Server Management • IMM Management • Starth		
FRU Name CPU 1 Status	Status		x	
CPU 4 Status	Events There are	Hardware Information a ctive events for this device		
1	Close			

Click on the **Hardware Information** tab to view details about the component such as the FRU name and manufacturer ID (as shown in the following screen).

Syste	m Status Events + Service and Support + Server Management + IMM Management + Search		
CPUs Display the proc FRU Name CPU 1 Status CPU 2 Status	essors available on the server. Clicking on a CPU displays a Properties pop-up withdow with 2 tabls: Events, HW Info. Clickit speed (CHz) Clickit 220 Properties for CPU 1 Status	×	
CPU 3 Status CPU 4 Status			
CPO 4 Status	Events Hardware Information FRU Name CPU 1 Status Manufacture ID Intel(R) Corporation		
	Close		

Server timeouts

Select the **Server Timeouts** option under the Server Management tab to set timeouts to ensure that during a firmware update and powering on the system, the system does not hang indefinitely. You can enable this function by setting the values for the options as shown in the following screen.

Note: Server timeouts require that the in-band USB interface (or LAN over USB) be enabled to use commands. For more information about configuring the USB interface, see "Configuring USB" on page 73.

The following illustration shows the Server Timeouts window.

IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events - Service and Support - Server Management - IMM Management - Search			
Set transets to ensure that landing firmsome and powering on the server do not hang indefinitely. Enable Rover Of Deby # Roomy Reset			

For additional information about server timeouts, see "Setting server timeouts" on page 50.

PXE network boot

Select the **PXE Network Boot** option under the Server Management tab to set up your server to attempt a PXE network boot at the next server restart. For more information about setting up a PXE network boot, see "Setting up PXE network boot" on page 106.

Latest OS failure screen

Select the **Latest OS Failure Screen** option under the Server Management tab to view or clear the most recent operating system failure screen data that has been saved by the IMM2. The IMM2 stores only the most recent error event information, overwriting earlier OS failure screen data when a new error event occurs.

The following illustration is an example of the OS Failure Screen.

A problem has been detected and windows has been shut down to prevent damage to your computer.
The end-user manually generated the crashdump.
If this is the first time you've seen this Stop error screen, restart your computer. If this screen appears again, follow these steps:
Check to make sure any new hardware or software is properly installed. If this is a new installation, ask your hardware or software manufacturer for any Windows updates you might need.
If problems continue, disable or remove any newly installed hardware or software. Disable BIOS memory options such as caching or shadowing. If you need to use Safe Mode to remove or disable components, restart your computer, press F8 to select Advanced Startup Options, and then select Safe Mode.
Technical information:
*** STOP: 0x000000E2 (0x000000000000000,0x000000000000000,0x000000
Collecting data for crash dump Initializing disk for crash dump Beginning dump of physical memory. Dumping physical memory to disk: 100 Physical memory dump complete. Contact your system admin or technical support group for further assistance.

For more information about the Latest OS Failure Screen option, see "Capturing the latest OS failure screen data" on page 124.

IMM Management tab

This section provides information about the options under the IMM Management tab on the IMM2 web user interface home page.

The options under the IMM Management tab enable you to view and modify the IMM2 setting. For the list of the options and details on how to use the options to configure the IMM2, see Chapter 4, "Configuring the IMM2," on page 47.

Chapter 4. Configuring the IMM2

The IMM Management tab contains options to configure the IMM2. Use the IMM Management tab to view and change IMM2 settings. The following options are listed under the IMM Management tab (as shown in the illustration).

- IMM Properties
- Users
- Network
- Security
- IMM Configuration
- Restart IMM
- Reset IMM to factory defaults
- Activation Key Management

IBM Integrated Management Module II	weicom	e USERID Settings Log out
System Status Events • Service and Support • Server Management •	IMM Management (Im) Search	7
	IMM Properties	Various properties and settings related to the IMM
System Descriptive Name:	Users	Create and modify user accounts that will have access to the IMM console
System x3550 M4 change	Network	Network settings such as SNMP and LDAP used by the IMM
System Status and Health	Security	Configure security protocols such as SSL and SSH
The System Status and Health page provides an at-a-glance overview of the operating sta co-located on this one page.	IMM Configuration	View a summary of the current configuration settings.
System Status @ ower: On System state: System running in UEFI	Restart IMM	Restart the IMM. Typically only needed when experiencing problems with the IMM
System Information Power Actions Remote Control Latest OS Failure	Reset IMM to factory defaults	Sets all current configuration settings back to default values
Active Events	Activation Key Management	Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality
Severity A Source Date Message		

From the Integrated Management Module (IMM) Properties page, you can perform the following functions:

- Access the server firmware information
- Set the date and time:
 - Choose IMM2 time setting method: manual or NTP
 - Set the IMM2 date and time for manual setting method
 - Set NTP information for NTP setting method
 - Set IMM2 timezone information
- Access the IMM2 serial port information:
 - Configure the IMM2 serial port
 - Set IMM2 CLI key sequences

From the User Accounts page, you can perform the following functions:

- Manage IMM2 user accounts:
 - Create a user account
 - Click on a user name to edit properties for that user:
 - Edit user name

- Set user password
- Configure SNMPv3 settings for the user
- Manage Secure Shell (SSH) public authentication keys for the user
- Delete a user account
- Configure global user login settings:
 - Set user authentication method
 - Set web inactivity timeout
 - Configure user account security levels available for the IMM2
- · View users that are currently connected to the IMM2

From the Network Protocol Properties page, you can perform the following functions:

- Configure Ethernet settings:
 - Ethernet settings:
 - Host name
 - IPv4 and IPv6 enablement and address settings
 - Advanced Ethernet settings:
 - Autonegotiation enablement
 - MAC address management
 - Set maximum transmission unit
- Configure SNMP settings:
 - SNMPv1 enablement and configuration:
 - Set contact information
 - SNMP traps enablement and configuration
 - Community management
 - SNMPv3 enablement and configuration:
 - Set contact information
 - User account configuration
- Configure DNS settings:
 - Set DNS addressing preference (IPv4 or IPv6)
 - Additional DNS server addressing enablement and configuration
- Configure DDNS settings:
 - DDNS enablement
 - Select domain name source (custom or DHCP server)
 - Set custom domain name for custom, manually specified source
 - View DHCP server specified domain name
- Configure SMTP settings:
 - Set SMTP server IP address or host name
 - Set SMTP server port number
 - Test the SMTP connection
- Configure LDAP settings:
 - Set LDAP server configuration (DNS or pre-configured):
 - If DNS specified LDAP server configuration, set the search domain:
 - Extract search domain from login ID
 - · Manually specified search domain and service name

- Attempt to extract search domain from login ID then use manually specified search domain and service name
- If using a pre-configured LDAP server:
 - Set the LDAP server host name or IP address
 - Set the LDAP server port number
- Set LDAP server root distinguished name
- Set UID search attribute
- Select binding method (anonymous, with configured credentials, with login credentials):
 - For configured credentials, set client distinguished name and password
- Enhanced role-based security for Active Directory Users enablement:
 - If disabled:
 - Set group filter
 - Set group search attribute
 - Set login permission attribute
 - If enabled, set the server target name
- Configure Telnet settings:
 - Telnet access enablement
 - Set maximum number of Telnet sessions
- Configure USB settings:
 - Ethernet over USB enablement
 - External Ethernet to Ethernet over USB port forwarding enablement and management
- Configure Port Assignments:
 - View open port numbers
 - Set port numbers used by IMM2 services:
 - HTTP
 - HTTPS
 - Telnet CLI
 - SSH CLI
 - SNMP agent
 - SNMP Traps
 - Remote Control
 - CIM over HTTPS
 - CIM over HTTP

From the Security page, you can perform the following functions:

- · HTTPS server enablement and certificate management
- CIM over HTTPS enablement and certificate management
- · LDAP security selection and certificate management
- SSH server enablement and certificate management

From the IMM Configuration page, you can perform the following functions:

- View an IMM2 configuration summary
- Backup or restore the IMM2 configuration
- View backup or restore status

- Reset the IMM2 configuration to its factory default settings
- Access the IMM2 initial setup wizard

From the Restart IMM page, you can reset the IMM2.

From the Reset IMM2 to factory defaults.. page, you can reset the IMM2 configuration to its factory default settings.

From the Activation Key Management page, you can manage activation keys for optional IMM2 and server Features on Demand (FoD). See Chapter 7, "Features on Demand," on page 125 for information about managing FoD activation keys.

Setting server timeouts

Use the Server Timeouts option to set timeouts to ensure that the server does not hang indefinitely during a firmware update or powering on the server. You can enable this function by setting the value for this option shown in the following illustration.

Note: Server timeouts require that the in-band USB interface (or LAN over USB) be enabled to use commands. For additional information about enabling and disabling the USB interface, see "Configuring USB" on page 73.

IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events • Service and Support • Server Management • IMM Management • Search			
Set transit to ensure that leading firmware and powering on the server do not hang indefinitely. Enable Cover off Deby Reset			

To set the server timeout values, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2 where you want to set the server timeouts. (see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8).
- 2. Click Server Management; then, select Server Timeouts.

You can set the IMM2 to respond automatically to the following events:

- Halted operating system
- · Failure to load operating system
- **3**. Enable the server timeouts that correspond to the events that you want the IMM2 to respond to automatically. See "Server timeout selections" for a description of each choice.
- 4. Click Apply.

Note: There is a **Reset** button that you can use to clear all timeouts simultaneously.

Server timeout selections

Enable OS Watchdog

Use the **Enable OS Watchdog** field to specify the number of minutes between checks of the operating system by the IMM2. If the operating system fails to respond to one of these checks, the IMM2 generates an OS timeout alert and restarts the server. After the server is restarted, the OS watchdog is disabled until the operating system is shut down and the server is power cycled. To set the OS watchdog value, select **Enable OS Watchdog** and select a time interval from the menu. To turn off this watchdog, deselect **Enable OS Watchdog**. To capture operating-systemfailure screens, you must enable the watchdog in the **Enable OS Watchdog** field.

Enable Loader Watchdog

Use the **Enable Loader Watchdog** field to specify the number of minutes that the IMM2 waits between the completion of POST and the starting of the operating system. If this interval is exceeded, the IMM2 generates a loader timeout alert and automatically restarts the server. After the server is restarted, the loader timeout is automatically disabled until the operating system is shut down and the server is power cycled (or until the operating system starts and the software is successfully loaded). To set the loader timeout value, select the time limit that the IMM2 waits for the operating-system startup to be completed. To turn off this watchdog, deselect **Enable Loader Watchdog** from the menu.

Enable Power Off Delay

Use the **Enable Power Off Delay** field to specify the number of minutes that the IMM2 subsystem will wait for the operating system to shutdown before powering off the system. To set the power off delay timeout value, select the time limit that the IMM2 waits after the operating-system powers off. To turn off this watchdog, deselect **Enable Loader Watchdog** from the menu.

Setting the IMM2 date and time

Note: IMM2 Date and Time settings cannot be modified in the NGP environment.

Select the **Date and Time** tab to view or change the IMM2 date and time. The IMM2 uses its own real-time clock to time stamp all events that are logged in the event log. Alerts that are sent by email and Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) use the real-time clock setting to time stamp the alerts. The clock settings support Greenwich mean time (GMT) offsets and daylight saving time for added ease-of-use for administrators who are managing systems remotely over different time zones. You can remotely access the event log even if the server is turned off or disabled.

The IMM2 date and time setting affects only the IMM2 clock and not the server clock. The IMM2 real-time clock and the server clock are separate, independent clocks and can be set to different times.

Changing the time and date setting (manual mode)

Complete the following steps to manually change the time and date setting:

- 1. From the **Indicate how the IMM date and time should be set** menu list, click **Set Date and Time Manually**.
- 2. In the **Date** field, type the current month, day, and year.
- **3**. In the **Time** field, type the numbers that correspond to the current hour, minutes, and seconds in the applicable fields.
 - The hour (hh) must be a number from 00 23 as represented on a 24-hour clock.
 - The minutes (mm) and seconds (ss) must be numbers from 00 59.

- 4. In the **GMT Offset** field, select the number that specifies the offset, in hours, from GMT. This number must correspond to the time zone where the server is located.
- 5. Select or clear the **Automatically adjust for Daylight Saving Time (DST)** check box to specify whether the IMM2 clock automatically adjusts when the local time changes between standard time and daylight saving time.

The following illustration shows the IMM Date and Time tab when setting the date and time manually.

IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID
System Status Events + Service and Support + Server Management + IMM Management + Search	
Integrated Management Module (IMM) Properties Varous properties and settings related to the IMM Apply Reset Firmware Date and Time Serial Port	
IMM Date and Time Settings	
Indicate how the IMM Date and Time should be set. Choose a method from the pull-down list and supply appropriate settings.	
Set Date and Time Manualy	
Date: 🕗	
7/20/2012	
Time: 🕖	
8:43 AM	
GMT Offset:	
GM I Offset: 🐲 +0:00 - Greenwich Mean Time (Britain, Ireland, Portugal, Reykjavk (Iceland), Western Africa)	~
Automatically adjust for Daylight Savings Time (DST) 🖗	

Changing the time and date settings (NTP server mode)

Complete the following steps to synchronize the IMM2 clock with the server clock:

- 1. From the **Indicate how the IMM date and time should be set** menu list, click **Synchronize with an NTP server**.
- 2. In the **NTP server host name or IP address** field, specify the name of the NTP server to be used for clock synchronization.
- **3**. In the **Synchronization frequency (in minutes)** field, specify the approximate interval between synchronization requests. Enter a value between 3 1440 minutes.
- 4. Check the **Synchronize when these settings are saved** check box to request an immediate synchronization (when you click **Apply**), instead of waiting for the interval time to lapse.
- 5. In the **GMT Offset** field, select the number that specifies the offset, in hours, from GMT, corresponding to the time zone where the server is located.
- 6. Select or clear the **Automatically adjust for Daylight Saving Time (DST)** check box to specify whether the IMM2 clock automatically adjusts when the local time changes between standard time and daylight saving time.

The following illustration shows the IMM Date and Time tab when synchronizing with the server clock.

nize with an NTP s	erver v
ime: 012/07/20 08:43 (NTP time)
TP server host nan	ne or IP address (you can specify up to 4 addresses): 🔍
not used)	
not used)	
vnchronization freq ,440	uency (minutes) 🤌
Synchronize whe	n these settings are saved 🎯
MT Offset: @	Mean Time (Britain, Ireland, Portugal, Reykjavík (Iceland), Western Africa)

Configuring the serial port settings

Select the **Serial Port** option to specify serial port redirection of the host. The IMM2 provides two serial ports that are used for serial redirection:

Serial port 1 (COM1)

Serial port 1 (COM1) on System x servers is used for IPMI Serial over LAN (SOL). COM1 is configurable only through the IPMI interface.

Serial port 2 (COM2)

On blade servers, serial port 2 (COM2) is used for SOL. On System x rack servers and NGP servers, COM2 is used for serial redirection through Telnet or SSH. COM2 is not configurable through the IPMI interface. On rack-mounted and tower servers, COM2 is an internal COM port with no external access.

Complete the following fields for serial port redirection:

Baud Rate

Specify the data-transfer rate of your serial port connection in this field. To set the baud rate, select the data-transfer rate, between 9600 and 115200, that corresponds to your serial port connection.

Parity Specify the parity bits of your serial port connection in this field. Available options are None, Odd, or Even.

Stop Bits

Specify the number of stop bits of your serial port connection in this field. Available options are 1 or 2.

CLI Mode

In this field, select CLI with IMM2 compatible keystroke sequences or select CLI with user defined keystroke sequences if you want to use your own key sequence. If you select CLI with user defined keystroke sequences, you must define the key sequence in the User-defined key sequence for 'Enter CLI' field.

After the serial redirection starts, it continues until you type the exit key sequence. When the exit key sequence is typed, serial redirection stops and you are returned to the command mode in the Telnet or SSH session. Use the **User-defined key sequence for 'Enter CLI'** field to specify the exit key sequence.

The following illustration shows the Serial Port tab.

Sys	stem Status	Events 👻	Service and	Support 👻	Server Managen	nent 🗸 IM	4M Management 🚽	• Search
rious prope	ated Ma			dule	(IMM) Proj	pertie	S	
Firmware	Date and T	ime Serial	Port					
Serial F Baud Rate	Port 2 (CC :@	DM2)	¥					
Baud Rate		DM2)	Y					
Baud Rate 115200 Parity: @	:0	DM2)						
Baud Rate 115200 Parity: None Stop Bits: 1 CLI Mode:	.0		(-	*				

Configuring user accounts

Select the **Users** option under the IMM Management tab to create and modify user accounts for the IMM2 and view group profiles. You will see the following informational message.

Note: In a NGP system, IMM2 user accounts are managed by the CMM.



User accounts

Select the **Users Accounts** tab to create, modify, and view user accounts as shown in the following illustration.

Note: The IMM2 subsystem comes with one login profile.

IBM Int	tegrated	Management	Module II					USERID	Settings
V	System 5	Status Events	• Service a	nd Support 👻 Server Mana	gement -	IMM Management + Search			
Create an		and view user a		Group Profies' tab to create, 1	nodify and	I view group profile for active directory use	rs.		
Users A		Group Profiles							
Create	a, modify ;	t user. Note: By	default, the D	4M subsystem comes configur	isole. To a ed with o Delete	dd a user profile, click "Create User" and co ne login profile that al more	onfigure the profile details, Click a User N	lame to view	or change
	User Na	me	Access	Password Expiration		Active Sessions			
	USERID		Supervisor	No Expiration		(Web-HTTPS)9.44.77.169			
	useman	ne 1	Supervisor	No Expiration		(none)			

Create user

Click the **Create User...** tab to create a new user account. Complete the following fields: **User name**, **Password**, and **Confirm Password** as shown in the following illustration.

Create New Use	r	x
User Credentials	User Credentials	
Authority	Enter a user name and password.	
SNMPv3	User name:	
	username1	
	Password:	
	••••••	
	Confirm password:	
	••••••	
	User name rules:	Password rules:
	Must be 1-16 characters	Passwords are not required
	Cannot contain white space characters	Must be 0-20 characters
	Can only contain the characters A-Z, a-z,	Cannot contain white space characters
	0-9, '_' (underscore) and '.' (period) Must be different for each user	Password and password confirm values must match
		Can only contain the characters A-Z, a-z,
		0-9, ~`!@#\$%^&*()-+={}[] :;'''<>,?/
< Back Next >	Finish Cancel	

User properties

Click the **User Properties** tab to modify existing user accounts (as shown in the following illustration).

User Properties			
User Credentials	Authority	SNMPv3	SSH Client Public Key
User name: USERID			
Password:			
Confirm password			
User name rules:			Password rules:
Cannot con	tain white sp	ace charact	ers 📕 Passwords are not required

User authority

Click the **Authority** tab to set the user authority. The following user authority levels are available:

Supervisor

The user has no restrictions.

Read only

The user has read-only access only and cannot perform actions such as file transfers, power and restart actions, or remote presence functions.

Custom

Allows a more custom profile for user authority with settings for the actions that the user is allowed to perform.

SNMP access rights

Click the **SNMPv3** tab to set SNMP access for the account. The following user access options are available:

Authentication protocol

Specify either **HMAC-MD5** or **HMAC-SHA** as the authentication protocol. These are the algorithms used by the SNMPv3 security model for authentication. If the **Authentication Protocol** is not enabled, no authentication protocol will be used.

Privacy protocol

The data transfer between the SNMP client and the agent can be protected using encryption. The supported methods are **DES** and **AES**. Privacy protocol is valid only if the authentication protocol is set to either **HMAC-MD5** or **HMAC-SHA**.

Privacy password

Specify the encryption password in this field.

Confirm privacy password

Specify the encryption password again for confirmation.

Access type

Specify either **Get** or **Set** as the access type. SNMPv3 users with **Get** as the access type can perform only query operations. SNMPv3 users with **Set** as the access type, can perform query operations and modify settings (for example, setting the password for a user).

Hostname/IP address for traps

Specify the trap destination for the user. This can be an IP address or hostname. Using traps, the SNMP agent notifies the management station about events, (for example, when a processor temperature exceeds the limit).

Group profiles

Select the **Group Profiles** tab to create, modify, and view group profiles as shown in the following illustration.

IBM Integrated Mana	gement Module II
System Status	Events • Service and Support • Server Management • IMM Management • Search
User Account	S
Create and modify and vie	w user accounts. Use 'Group Profiles' tab to create, modify and view group profile for active directory users.
Users Accounts Group	p Profiles
Group Profile	es for Active Directory
Note: These profiles will	not be used while the LDAP client is configured for both authentication and authorization.
To use these group prof	les for authorization and LDAP for authentication, reconfigure the LDAP Client section of the Network Protocols page
Create Group Del	ate
Group ID	Role
No Grou	up Profiles Available.

Click **Create Group** to create a new user group. The following illustration shows the Create Group Profile window.

Create Group Profile X
Group ID: 💷
Role:
Supervisor Has no restrictions.
Read-only Has only read-only access, and cannot perform any save, modify, clear, or state affecting operations (e.g. restart IMM, restore defaults, upgrade the firmware, etc.)
O Custom May or may not have any restrictions, depending on which custom authority level is assigned to the group.
OK Cancel

Enter a **Group ID** and select the **Role**, (see "User authority" on page 56 for information about the user authority levels).

If you need to delete a group, click **Delete**. The following illustration shows the Confirm Group Deletion window.

IBM Integrated Manager	nent Module II		
System Status E	vents - Service and Support	👻 Server Management 👻 IMM Management 🖘 Search 🤐	
User Accounts			
Create and modify and view u	ser accounts, Use 'Group Profi	es' tab to create, modify and view group profile for active directory users.	
Users Accounts Group Pr	ofiles		
Group Profiles	for Active Direc	tory	
Note: These profiles will not	be used while the LDAP client	is configured for both authentication and authorization.	
To use these group profiles	for authorization and LDAP for	authentication, reconfigure the LOAR Client section of the Network Protocols of	
Create Group Delete		Confirm Group Deletion	ж
	Role	Do you want to delete the group 'groupProfile1'?	
Group ID		OK Cancel	

Configuring global login settings

Use the Global login settings tab to configure login settings that apply to all users.

General settings

Click the **General** tab to select how user login attempts are authenticated and specify how long, in minutes, the IMM2 waits before it disconnects an inactive web session. In the **User authentication method** field, you can specify how users who are attempting to login should be authenticated. You can select one of the following authentication methods:

- Local only Users are authenticated by a search of the local use account configured on the IMM2. If there is no match of the user ID and password, access is denied.
- **LDAP only:** The IMM2 attempts to authenticate the user using an LDAP server. Local user accounts on the IMM2 are *not* searched with this authentication method.
- Local first, then LDAP: Local authentication is attempted first. If local authentication fails; then, LDAP authentication is attempted.
- LDAP first, then Local: LDAP authentication is attempted first. If LDAP authentication fails; then, local authentication is attempted.

Notes:

- Only locally administered accounts are shared with the IPMI and SNMP interfaces. These interfaces do not support LDAP authentication.
- IPMI and SNMP users can login using the locally administered accounts when the **User authentication method** field is set to **LDAP only**.

In the **Web inactivity session timeout** field, you can specify how long, in minutes, the IMM2 waits before it disconnects an inactive web session. Select **No timeout** to disable this feature. Select **User picks timeout** to select the timeout period during the login process.

The inactivity timeout applies only to web pages that do *not* automatically refresh. If a web browser continuously request web page updates when a user navigates to a web page that automatically refreshes, the inactivity timeout will not automatically end the user's session. Users can choose whether or not to have the web page content automatically refreshed every 60 seconds. See "Page auto refresh" on page 13 for additional information describing the auto refresh setting.

The General tab is shown in the following illustration.

Global Logi	n Settings	x
Global	Login Settings	
General	Account Security Level	
User auth	entication method: 🥹	
Local Onl	у 👻	
Web inact	ivity session timeout 🖗 es 🔹 👻	
OK Canc	el	

There are some IMM2 web pages that are automatically refreshed even if the automatic refresh setting is not selected. IMM2 web pages that are automatically refreshed are as follows:

- **System Status:** The system and power status will be refreshed automatically every three seconds.
- **Server Power Actions:** The power status will be refreshed automatically every three seconds.
- **Remote Control:** The Start remote control buttons will be refreshed automatically every second. The Session List table will be refreshed automatically once every minute.

The IMM2 firmware supports up to six simultaneous web sessions. To free up sessions for use by others, it is recommended that you log out of the web session when you are finished rather than relying on the inactivity timeout to automatically close your session.

Note: If you leave the browser open on an IMM2 web page that automatically refreshes, your web session will not automatically close due to inactivity.

Account security policy settings

Click the **Account Security Level** tab to select the account security policy setting. There are three levels of account security policy settings:

- Legacy Security Settings
- High Security Settings
- Custom Security Settings

The Account Security Level tab is shown in the following illustration.

Global	Login Settings			
General	Account Security Level			
Custom S	ecurity Settings 🤜 🥝			r
Pass	word required @			
Com	plex password required 🕘			
Pass	word expiration period (days) 🧐	0	*	
Minin	num password length 🥘	5	*	
Minin	num password reuse cycle 🥹	0	*	
Minin	num password change interval (hours) 🤍	0	*	
Maxi	num number of login failures (times)	5	*	
Lock	out period after maximum login failures (minutes) 🎱	2	+	
Minin	num different characters in passwords	0	*	
Facto	ry default 'USERID' account password must be changed on next login $^{\oslash}$			
-				_

Select the desired level from the item list. The Legacy Security Settings and High Security Settings predefine the policy setting values and cannot be changed. The Custom Security Settings allow users to customize the security policies as needed.

The following table shows the values for each level of the security settings.

Policy setting/field	Legacy Security Settings	High Security Settings	Custom Security Settings
Password required	No	Yes	Yes or No
Complex password required	No	Yes	Yes or No
Password expiration period (days)	None	90	0 – 365
Minimum password length	None	8	5 - 20
Minimum password reuse cycle	None	5	0 – 5
Minimum password change interval (hours)	None	24	0 – 240
Maximum number of login failures (times)	5	5	0 - 10
Lockout period after maximum login failures (minutes)	2	60	0 – 240
Minimum different characters in passwords	None	2	0 – 19

Table 3. Security setting policy values

Table 3. Security setting policy values (continued)

Policy setting/field	Legacy Security Settings	High Security Settings	Custom Security Settings
Factory default 'USERID' account password must be changed on next login	No	Yes	Yes or No
Force user to change password on first access	No	Yes	Yes or No

The following information is a description of the fields for the security settings.

Password required

This field indicates whether login IDs with no password are allowed to be created. If the **Password required** checkbox is selected, any existing login ID's with no password will be required to define a password the next time the user logs in.

Complex password required

If complex passwords are required the password must adhere to the following rules:

- Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters long.
- Passwords must contain at least three of the following four categories:
 - At least one lower case alpha character.
 - At least one upper case alpha character.
 - At least one numeric character.
 - At least one special character.
- Spaces or white space characters are not allowed.
- Passwords may have no more than three of the same character used consecutively (for example, aaa).
- Passwords must not be a repeat or reverse of the associated user ID.

If complex passwords are not required the password:

- Must be a minimum of five (or the number specified in the **Minimum password length** field) characters long.
- Cannot contain any spaces or white space characters.
- Must contain at least one numeric character.
- Can be blank (only if the **Password Required** check box is disabled).

Password expiration period (days)

This field contains the maximum password age that is permitted before the password must be changed. A value of 0 to 365 days are supported. The default value for this field is 0 (disabled).

Minimum password length

This field contains the minimum length of the password. 5 to 20 characters are supported for this field. If the **Complex password required** check box is checked; then, the minimum password length must be at least eight characters.

Minimum password reuse cycle

This field contains the number of previous passwords that cannot be

reused. Up to five previous passwords can be compared. Select 0 to allow the reuse of all previous passwords. The default value for this field is 0 (disabled).

Minimum password change interval (hours)

This field contains how long a user must wait between password changes. A value of 0 to 240 hours are supported. The default value for this field is 0 (disabled).

Maximum number of login failures (times)

This field contains the number of failed login attempts that are allowed before the user is locked out for a period of time. A value of 0 to 10 is supported. The default value for this field is 0 (disabled).

Lockout period after maximum login failures (minutes)

This field specifies how long (in minutes), the IMM2 subsystem will disable remote login attempts from all users after detecting more than five sequential login failures from any user.

Minimum different characters in passwords

This field specifies the number of characters that must be different between the new password and the previous password. A value of 0 to 19 is supported.

Factory default 'USERID' account password must be changed on next login

A manufacturing option is provided to reset the default USERID profile after the first successful login. When this checkbox is enabled, the default password must be changed before the account can be used. The new password is subject to all active password enforcement rules.

Force user to change password on first access

After setting up a new user with a default password, selection of this check box will force that user to change their password the first time the user logs in.

Configuring network protocols

Click the **Network** option under the IMM Management tab to view and set network settings.

Configuring the Ethernet settings

Click the **Ethernet** tab to view or modify IMM2 Ethernet settings as shown in the following illustration.

Syst	tem Status	Events •	Service and Se	upport 👻 5	erver Manager	nent 👻 IMM	Manageme	nt 🕶 🛛 Search
letwork setti	rk Proto	NMP and LD/	operties AP used by the	ІММ				

To use an IPv4 Ethernet connection, complete the following steps:

1. Select the IPv4 option; then, select the corresponding checkbox.

Note: Disabling the Ethernet interface prevents access to the IMM2 from the external network.

- 2. From the **Configure IP address settings** list, select one of the following options:
 - Obtain an IP address from a DHCP server
 - Use static IP address
- **3.** If you want the IMM2 to default to a static IP address if unable to contact a DHCP server, select the corresponding check box.
- 4. In the Static address field, type the IP address of the IMM2.

Note: The IP address must contain four integers from 0 to 255 with no spaces and separated by periods.

5. In the **Subnet mask** field, type the subnet mask that is used by the IMM2.

Note: The subnet mask must contain four integers from 0 to 255 with no spaces or consecutive periods and separated by periods. The default setting is 255.255.255.0.

6. In the Default Gateway field, type your network gateway router.

Note: The gateway address must contain four integers from 0 to 255 with no spaces or consecutive periods and separated by periods.

The following illustration shows the Ethernet tab.

M2-e41f13d90631		
IPv4 IPv	^{'6}	
🔽 Enable IPv4 🎱		
10		
Currently assig	jned IPv4 address in	formation
Host name	Address IMM2-e41f13d90631	
	9.37.189.59	
	255.255.240.0	
Gateway address		
the second second second second second	raleigh.ibm.com	
Primary DNS Server		
Second DNS Server		
Tertiary DNS Server		
Configuro ID a	ddress settings	
configure ir a	rom DHCP server	
Obtain IP address f		
-	iress	
Obtain IP address t Use static IP add	ess from DHCP server	
Obtain IP address t Use static IP add Obtain IP addre		0
Obtain IP address I Use static IP add Obtain IP addre Static address:	ess from DHCP server	@ @

Configuring advanced Ethernet settings

Click the **Advanced Ethernet** tab to set additional Ethernet settings. From the **MAC selection** list choose one of the following selections:

- Used burned in MAC address
 - The Burned-in MAC address option is a unique physical address that is assigned to this IMM2 by the manufacturer. The address is a read-only field.

- · Used locally administered MAC address

In the **Maximum transmission unit** field, specify the maximum transmission unit of a packet (in bytes) for your network interface. The maximum transmission unit range is from 60 to 1500. The default value for this field is 1500. The following illustration shows the Advanced Ethernet tab and associated fields.

	atod Manag	jamant Ma	dulo II						
Syst	tem Status	Events 🔻	Service and Si	upport 🔻 S	erver Manager	ment 👻 IMM	I Manageme	nt 🔻 Search. , ,	
Vetwor letwork settin Apply Ros	ng such as Sh	COL Pro	operties	тмм					
Ethernet	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Telnet	USB	Port Assignments	
Ethernet	Advanced Advanced Internation	Ethernet ©	ates via Ftherm	-					
	ransmission u								

Configuring SNMP alert settings

Complete the following steps to configure the IMM2 SNMP setting.

1. Click the **SNMP** tab as shown in the following illustration.

Sys	tem Status	Events -	Service and Su	ipport - S	erver Manager	ment 👻 IMM	Manageme	nt 👻 Search
	ng such as SN		perties used by the					
Ethernet	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Telnet	USB	Port Assignments
		Hanager	nent Prot	ocol (SN	MP)			
and the second second	Network	-	inenie i roc					
Configure S		or v3 agents.						

- 2. Check the corresponding checkbox to enable the SNMPv1 agent or the SNMPv3 agent.
- **3**. If enabling the SNMPv1 agent, proceed to step 4. If enabling the SNMPv3 agent, proceed to step 5 on page 65.
- 4. If enabling the SNMPv1 agent, complete the following fields:

- a. Click the **Contact** tab. In the **Contact person** field, enter the name of the contact person. In the **Location** field, enter the site (geographical coordinates).
- b. Click the **Traps** tab; then, select **Enabled** in the **SNMP Traps** field to forward alerts to SNMP communities on your network.
- c. Click the **Communities** tab to set up a community to define the administrative relationship between SNMP agents and SNMP managers. You must define at least one community.

Notes:

- If an error message window appears, make the necessary adjustments to the fields that are listed in the error window; then, scroll to the top of the page and click **Apply** to save your corrected information.
- You must configure at least one community to enable this SNMP agent. Complete the following fields:
- 1) In the **Community Name** field, enter a name or authentication string to specify the community.
- 2) In the Access type field, select an access type.
 - Select **Trap** to allow all hosts in the community to receive traps.
 - Select **Get** to allow all hosts in the community to receive traps and query management information base (MIB) objects.
 - Select **Set** to allow all hosts in the community to receive traps, query, and set MIB objects.
- d. In the **Host Name** or **IP Address** field, enter the host name or IP address of each community manager.
- e. Click Apply to apply the changes you have made.
- 5. If enabling the SNMPv3 agent, complete the following fields:
 - a. Click the **Contact** tab. In the **Contact person** field, enter the name of the contact person. In the **Location** field, enter the site (geographical coordinates).
 - b. Click the **Users** tab to show the list of local user accounts for the console.

Note: This is the same list that is in the Users option. You must configure SNMPv3 for each user account that will need SNMPv3 access.

c. Click **Apply** to apply the changes you have made.

Note: When configuring SNMP, required fields that are not complete or have incorrect values are highlighted with a red X that can be used to guide you through completion of the required fields.

The following illustration shows the SNMP tab when configuring the SNMPv1 agent.

(SNMP)		
	Enable Community 3	
Enable Controllity 2		
1 receive traps		
118		
	must be configured. Enable Community 2	must be configured. Enable Community 2 Enable Community 3 d receive traps

Configuring DNS

Click the **DNS** tab to view or modify IMM2 Domain Name System settings. If you click the **Use additional DNS address servers** checkbox, specify the IP addresses of up to three Domain Name System servers on your network. Each IP address must contain integers from 0 to 255, separated by periods as shown in the following illustration.

IBM Inte	egrated Mana	gement Mod	lule II						USERI	Settings
	System Status	Events 👻	Service and Si	ipport + Si	erver Manager	nent 🗸 IMM	Manageme	nt 🗸 Search		
Network s	ork Proto etting such as S Reset									
Etherne	t SNMP	ONS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Teinet	USB	Port Assignments		
Doma	in Name S	ystem (D	NS)							
automat	ically assigned b	in the DHCP since a state of the second	erver when DH esses' to be en	CP is in use. abled, at least	t one must be	non-zero. Th	e additional		bled, and other DNS addresse n list, so the hostname lookup	
Preferred IPv6	DNS address to	/pe: 🎯								
Use a	dditional DNS ad	dress servers	(at least one n	ust be non-z	ero)					
-	IPv4	11	IPv6							
Primary	0.0.0.0 rv 0.0.0.0									
Seconda Tertiary	0.0.0.0									
rur tidi y	0.0.0.0		1.00							

Configuring DDNS

Click the **DDNS** tab to view or modify IMM2 Dynamic Domain Name System settings. Click the **Enable DDNS** checkbox, to enable DDNS. When DDNS is enabled, the IMM2 notifies a domain name server to change, in real time, the active domain name server configuration of its configured hostnames, addresses or other information stored in the domain name server.

Choose an option from the item list to select how you want the domain name of the IMM2 to be selected, as shown in the following illustration.

IBM Integr	ated Manag	jement Mod	ule II						
Sys	tem Status	Events 👻	Service and S	iupport + Se	rver Managen	nent 👻 JMM	4 Manageme	nt 👻 [Search. , .	
Network sett	rk Proto	IMP and LDAP	perties used by the	5 1ММ					
Ethernet	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Teinet	USB	Port Assignments	
Enable or o	lisable Dynami	c DNS on this	IMM	DNS) Prot	ocol				
Use cust	tom domain	name							
Use don	nain name o	btained fro	m the DHCI	P server					

Configuring SMTP

Click the **SMTP** tab to view or modify IMM2 SMTP settings. Complete the following fields to view or modify SMTP settings:

IP address or host name

Type the host name of the SMTP server. Use this field to specify the IP address or, if DNS is enabled and configured, the host name of the SMTP server.

Port Specify the port number for the SMTP server. The default value is 25.

Test connection

Click **Test Connection**, a test email is sent to verify your SMTP settings are correct.

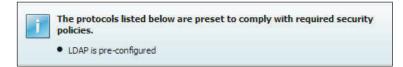
The following illustration shows the SMTP tab.

	tem Status	Events •	Service and S	upport + S	erver Manager	ment 👻 IMM	Manageme	nt 👻 Search
			operties					
	set							
themet	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Teinet	USB	Port Assignments
Provide the		for an SMTP	tocol (SM server. This wil		ou configure al	erts to be sent	via E-Mail.	

Configuring LDAP

Click the LDAP tab to view or modify IMM2 LDAP Client settings.

Note: In a NGP environment, the IMM2 is set up to use the LDAP server running on the CMM. You will see an informational message that reminds you that the LDAP settings may not be changed, as shown in the following illustration.



Using a LDAP server, the IMM2 can authenticate a user by querying or searching an LDAP directory on an LDAP server, instead of going through its local user database. The IMM2 can remotely authenticate any user access through a central LDAP server. You can assign authority levels according to information that is found on the LDAP server. You can also use LDAP to assign users and IMM2s to groups and perform group authentication, in addition to the normal user (password check) authentication. For example, an IMM2 can be associated with one or more groups, the user would pass group authentication only if the user belongs to at least one group that is associated with the IMM2.

The following illustration shows the LDAP tab.

IBM Integrated Management Mod	lule II				USER
System Status Events 🕶	Service and Support \star	Server Manage	ment 👻 IMM	1 Manageme	nt 👻 Search, 🗤
Network Protocol Pro	perties Pused by the IMM				
Ethernet SNMP DNS	DDNS SMTP	LDAP	Telnet	USB	Port Assignments
authentication can be discovered dyn	LDAP client that can be c namically or manually pre-co	onfigured to pr	ovide user aut		through one or more LDAP servers. The LDAP server(s) to be used for which of these two methods should be used.
Use LDAP Servers for: Authentication	and Authorization 👻				
Active Directory Settings:					
Enable enhanced role-based se	curity for Active Directory	Users			
Use Pre-configured LDAP servers 👻	02				
Host name or IP address	Port				
0.0.0.0	389				
	389				
	389				
	389				
Miscellaneous Settings Root distinguished name:					
UID search attribute: sAMAccountName					
Binding method: Anonymously					
Group Filter 🔄					
Group Search Attribute memberOf					
Login Permission Attribute 🖗					

To use a preconfigured LDAP server, complete the following fields:

LDAP server configuration item list

Select **Use Pre-Configured LDAP Server** from the item list. The port number for each server is optional. If this field is left blank, the default value of 389 is used for nonsecured LDAP connections. For secured connections, the default value is 636. You must configure at least one LDAP server.

Root distinguished name

This is the distinguished name (DN) of the root entry of the directory tree on the LDAP server (for example, dn=mycompany,dc=com). This DN is used as the base object for all searches.

UID search attribute

When the binding method is set to **Anonymously** or **With Configured Credentials**, the initial bind to the LDAP server is followed by a search request that retrieves specific information about the user, including the user's DN, login permissions, and group membership. This search request must specify the attribute name that represents the user IDs on that server. This attribute name is configured in this field. On Active Directory servers, the attribute name is usually **sAMAccountName**. On Novell eDirectory and OpenLDAP servers, the attribute name is **uid**. If this field is left blank, the default is **uid**.

Binding method

Before you can search or query the LDAP server you must send a bind request. This field controls how this initial bind to the LDAP server is performed. The following bind methods are available:

- Anonymously
 - Use this method to bind without a DN or password. This method is strongly discouraged because most servers are configured to not allow search requests on specific user records.
- With Configured Credentials
 - Use this method to bind with configured client DN and password.
- With Login Credentials
 - Use this method to bind with the credentials that are supplied during the login process. The user ID can be provided through a DN, a fully qualified domain name, or a user ID that matches the UID Search Attribute that is configured on the IMM2. If the initial bind is successful, a search is performed to find an entry on the LDAP server that belongs to the user who is logging in. If necessary, a second attempt to bind is made, this time with the DN that is retrieved from the user's LDAP record and the password that was entered during the login process. If this fails, the user is denied access. The second bind is performed only when the Anonymous or With Configured Credentials binding methods are used.

Group Filter

The **Group Filter** field is used for group authentication. Group authentication is attempted after the user's credentials are successfully verified. If group authentication fails, the user's attempt to log on is denied. When the group filter is configured, it is used to specify to which groups the service processor belongs. This means that the user must belong to at least one of the groups that are configured for group authentication to succeed. If the **Group Filter** field is left blank, group authentication automatically succeeds. If the group filter is configured, an attempt is made to match at least one group in the list to a group that the user belongs. If there is no match, the user fails authentication and is denied access. If there is at least one match, group authentication is successful.

The comparisons are case sensitive. The filter is limited to 511 characters and can consist of one or more group names. The colon (:) character must be used to delimit multiple group names. Leading and trailing spaces are ignored, but any other space is treated as part of the group name. A selection to allow or not allow the use of wildcards in the group name is provided. The filter can be a specific group name (for example, IMMWest), an asterisk (*) used as a wildcard that matches everything, or a wildcard with a prefix (for example, IMM*). The default filter is IMM*. If security policies in your installation prohibit the use of wildcards, you can choose to not allow the use of wildcards. The wildcard character (*) is then treated as a normal character instead of the wildcard. A group name can be specified as a full DN or using only the *cn* portion. For example, a group with a DN of cn=adminGroup,dc=mycompany,dc=com can be specified using the actual DN or with adminGroup.

In Active Directory environments only, nested group membership is supported. For example, if a user is a member of GroupA and GroupB, and GroupA is also a member of GroupC, the user is said to be a member of GroupC also. Nested searches stop if 128 groups have been searched. Groups in one level are searched before groups in a lower level. Loops are not detected.

Group Search Attribute

In an Active Directory or Novell eDirectory environment, the **Group Search Attribute** field specifies the attribute name that is used to identify the groups to which a user belongs. In an Active Directory environment, the attribute name is **memberOf**. In an eDirectory environment, the attribute name is **groupMembership**. In an OpenLDAP server environment, users are usually assigned to groups whose objectClass equals PosixGroup. In that context, this field specifies the attribute name that is used to identify the members of a particular PosixGroup. This attribute name is **memberUid**. If this field is left blank, the attribute name in the filter defaults to **memberOf**.

Login Permission Attribute

When a user is authenticated through an LDAP server successfully, the login permissions for the user must be retrieved. To retrieve the login permissions, the search filter that is sent to the server must specify the attribute name that is associated with login permissions. The **Login Permission Attribute** field specifies the attribute name. If this field is left blank, the user is assigned a default of read-only permissions, assuming that the user passes the user and group authentication.

The attribute value that is returned by the LDAP server searches for the keyword string IBMRBSPermissions=. This keyword string must be immediately followed by a bit string that is entered as 12 consecutive 0s or 1s. Each bit represents a set of functions. The bits are numbered according to their positions. The left-most bit is bit position 0, and the right-most bit is bit position 11. A value of 1 at a bit position enables the function that is associated with that bit position. A value of 0 at a bit position disables the function that is associated with that bit position.

Table 4. Permission bits

Bit position	Function	Explanation
0	Deny Always	A user will always fail authentication. This function can be used to block a particular user or users associated with a particular group.
1	Supervisor Access	A user is given administrator privileges. The user has read/write access to every function. If you set this bit, you do not have to individually set the other bits.
2	Read Only Access	A user has read-only access, and cannot perform any maintenance procedures (for example, restart, remote actions, or firmware updates) or make modifications (for example, the save, clear, or restore functions. Bit position 2 and all other bits are mutually exclusive, with bit position 2 having the lowest precedence. When any other bit is set, this bit will be ignored.
3	Networking and Security	A user can modify the Security, Network Protocols, Network Interface, Port Assignments, and Serial Port configurations.
4	User Account Management	A user can add, modify, or delete users and change the Global Login Settings in the Login Profiles window.
5	Remote Console Access	A user can access the remote server console.
6	Remote Console and Remote Disk Access	A user can access the remote server console and the remote disk functions for the remote server.
7	Remote Server Power/Restart Access	A user can access the power on and restart functions for the remote server.
8	Basic Adapter Configuration	A user can modify configuration parameters in the System Settings and Alerts windows.
9	Ability to Clear Event Logs	A user can clear the event logs. Note: All users can view the event logs; but, the user is required to have this level of permission to clear the logs.
10	Advanced Adapter Configuration	A user has no restrictions when configuring the IMM2. In addition the user has administrative access to the IMM2. The user can perform the following advanced functions: firmware upgrades, PXE network boot, restore IMM2 factory defaults, modify and restore adapter configuration from a configuration file, and restart/reset the IMM2.

Table 4. Permission bits (continued)

Bit position	Function	Explanation
11	Reserved	This bit position is reserved for future use. If none of the bits are set, the user has read-only authority. Priority is given to login permissions that are retrieved directly from the user record.
		If the login permission attribute is not in the user's record, an attempt is made to retrieve the permissions from the groups to which the user belongs. This is performed as part of the group authentication phase. The user is assigned the inclusive OR of all the bits for all groups.
		The Read Only Access bit (position 2) is set only if all other bits are set to zero. If the Deny Always bit (position 0) is set for any of the groups, the user is refused access. The Deny Always bit (position 0) always has precedence over all other bits.

Configuring Telnet

Select the **Telnet** tab to view or modify IMM2 Telnet settings. Complete the following fields to view or modify Telnet settings:

Allow telnet access

Place a check-mark in the check box to choose whether or not you want the IMM2 to allow Telnet access.

Allowed simultaneous connections

Use the **Allowed simultaneous connections** list to choose the number of Telnet connections to allow at the same time.

The following illustration shows the Telnet tab.

	cem status	Events - Se	ervice and Sup	oport - Se	rver Managen	nent 👻 IMM	Managemei	nt • Search
etwor	k Proto	col Prop	perties					
twork settin pply Res		MP and LDAP	ised by the I	414				
Ethernet	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Teinet	USB	Port Assignments
elnet								
Control tein	et access to t	the IMM.						
Allow teln								
		connections:						

Configuring USB

Select the **USB** tab to view or modify IMM2 LDAP USB settings. The USB in-band interface, or LAN over USB, is used for in-band communications to the IMM2. Click the **Enable Ethernet over USB** check box to enable or disable the IMM2 Lan over USB interface.

Important: If you disable the USB in-band interface, you cannot perform an in-band update of the IMM2 firmware, server firmware, and DSA firmware using the Linux or Windows flash utilities. If the USB in-band interface is disabled, use the Firmware Server option under the Server Management tab to update the firmware. If you disable the USB in-band interface, also disable the watchdog timeouts to prevent the server from restarting unexpectedly.

The following illustration shows the USB tab.

hernet	SI	IMP	DNS DI	DNS S	ИТР	LDAP	Telnet	USB
ntrol th ass stora Enable B	e USB i ige). Etherne	interface use et over USB	0	ommunication			and the IMM.	This setti
		Mapping	Remove))	port for	warding 🥯		
		External Et	hernet port nur	nber	- Et	hernet over US	B port number	1
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		0			0			
		3389			33	89		
						00		

Mapping of external Ethernet port numbers to Ethernet over USB port numbers is controlled by clicking the **Enable external Ethernet to Ethernet over USB port forwarding** check box and completing the mapping information for ports you wish to have forwarded.

Configuring port assignments

Select the **Port Assignments** tab to view or modify IMM2 port assignments. Complete the following fields to view or modify port assignments:

HTTP In this field specify the port number for the HTTP server of the IMM2. The default value is 80. Valid port number values are from 1 to 65535.

HTTPS

In this field specify the port number that is used for web interface HTTPS Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) traffic. The default value is 443. Valid port number values are from 1 to 65535.

Telnet CLI

In this field specify the port number for Legacy CLI to log in through the Telnet service. The default value is 23. Valid port number values are from 1 to 65535.

SSH Legacy CLI

In this field specify the port number that is configured for Legacy CLI to log in through the SSH protocol. The default value is 22.

SNMP Agent

In this field specify the port number for the SNMP agent that runs on the IMM2. The default value is 161. Valid port number values are from 1 to 65535.

SNMP Traps

In this field specify the port number that is used for SNMP traps. The default value is 162. Valid port number values are from 1 to 65535.

Remote Control

In this field specify the port number that the remote control feature uses to view and interact with the server console. The default value is 3900 for rack-mounted and tower servers.

CIM over HTTP

In this field specify the port number for CIM over HTTP. The default value is 5988.

CIM over HTTPS

In this field specify the port number for CIM over HTTPS. The default value is 5989.

The following illustration shows the Port Assignments tab.

1000	Managen	nent Modul	e II						USERID Settings
System	Status Ev	vents 👻 Se	ervice and Su	upport 👻 S	erver Manager	ment 🗸 DMM	Manageme	nt • [Search	
etwork setting st Apply Reset									
Ethernet 9	SNMP	DNS	DDNS	SMTP	LDAP	Teinet	USB	Port Assignments	
that the new nu Currently open p	orts: 22, 23	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	fect. When changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Currently open p HTTP	orts: 22, 23 80	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	rect, when changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Currently open p HTTP HTTPS	orts: 22, 23	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	rect. When changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Currently open p HTTP HTTPS Telnet CLI	orts: 22, 23 80 443	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	rect, when changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Jurrently open p HTTP HTTPS Teinet CLI SSH CLI	orts: 22, 23 80 443 23	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	ecc. when changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Currently open p HTTP HTTPS Telnet CLI SSH CLI SNMP agent	orts: 22, 23 80 443 23 22	ick is not cur	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	ect. When changing a port number, make sure
hat the new nu Currently open p HTTP HTTPS Telnet CLI SSH CLI SNMP agent SNMP Traps	orts: 22, 23 80 443 23 22 161	ick s not cun 8, 80, 115, 13 0 0 0 0	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	ect. When changing a port number, make sure
that the new nu	orts: 22, 23 80 443 23 22 161 162 3900	ick s not cun 8, 80, 115, 13 0 0 0 0	rently being	used by a se	rvice. Otherwi	se, your chang	e wil not b	e saved. For examp more	ect. Ynnen changing a port hurroer, make sure:

Configuring security settings

Click the **Security** option under the IMM Management tab as shown in the following illustration to access and configure security properties, status, and settings for your IMM2.

To apply any changes you have made, you must click the **Apply** button at the upper left of the IMM Security window. To reset any changes you have made, you must click the **Reset Values** button.

IMM Management 👻 Search	h
IMM Properties	Various properties and settings related to the IMM
Users	Create and modify user accounts and group profiles that will have access to the IMM console
Network	Network settings such as SNMP and LDAP used by the IMM
Security	Configure security protocols such as SSL and SSH
IMM Configuration	View a summary of the current configuration settings.
Restart IMM	Restart the IMM. Typically only needed when experiencing problems with the IMM
Reset IMM to factory defaults	Sets all current configuration settings back to default values
Activation Key Management	Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality

Configuring HTTPS protocol

Click the **HTTPS Server** tab to configure the IMM2 web interface to use the more secure HTTPS protocol rather than the default HTTP protocol.

Notes:

- Only one protocol can be enabled at a time.
- Enabling this option requires additional configuration of the SSL certificates.
- When you change protocols, you must restart the IMM2 web server.

For more information about SSL, see "SSL overview" on page 80. The following illustration shows the HTTPS Server tab.



Note: On some servers, the IMM2 security levels may be controlled by another management system. In such environments, you can disabled the above actions in the IMM2 web interface.

HTTPS certificate handling

Use the options in the Actions menu for HTTPS certificate handling. If an option is disabled, you might need to perform another action first to enable it. While working with HTTPS certificates, you should disable the HTTPS server. For more information about certificate handling, see "SSL certificate handling" on page 80.

Note: After you set up the certificate handling, you must restart the IMM2 for your changes to take effect.

Configuring CIM over HTTPS protocol

Click the **CIM over HTTPS** tab to configure the IMM2 web interface to use the more secure CIM over HTTPS protocol, rather than the default CIM over HTTP protocol.

Notes:

- Only protocol may be enabled at a time.
- Enabling this option requires additional configuration of the SSL certificates.
- When you change protocols, you must restart the IMM2 web server.

For more information about SSL, see "SSL overview" on page 80. The following illustration shows the CIM over HTTPS tab.

	I rity y protocols such as H	TTPS and SSH	Manage secur	ity certificates.	
Apply Reset	Values				
HTTPS Server	CIM Over HTTPS	LDAP Client	SSH Server		
🔽 Enable CIM C	Over HTTPS 🥥				
	lanagement	e is installed.			
		e is installed. Actions			
Certificate statu		Actions			0
Certificate statu Generate a Nev	is:A signed certificate	Actions ed Certificate	est (CSR)		0
Certificate statu Generate a Nev	us:A signed certificate v Key and a Self-sign v Key and a Certificat	Actions ed Certificate	est (CSR)		000
Certificate statu Generate a Nev Generate a Nev	is:A signed certificate v Key and a Self-sign v Key and a Certificat d Certificate	Actions ed Certificate	est (CSR)		0 0

CIM over HTTPS certificate handling

Use the options under the Actions menu for CIM over HTTPS certificate handling. If an option is disabled, you might need to perform another action first to enable it. For more information about certificate handling, see "SSL certificate handling" on page 80.

Note: After you set up the certificate handling, you must restart the IMM2 for your changes to take effect.

Configuring LDAP client protocol

Click the **LDAP Client** option to use the more secure LDAP over SSL protocol rather than the default LDAP protocol.

Note: Enabling this option requires additional configuration of the SSL certificates. For more information about SSL, see "SSL overview" on page 80. The following illustration shows the LDAP Client tab.

MM Security onfigure security protocols such	n as HTTPS and SSH	. Manage security c	ertificates.
Apply Reset Values			
HTTPS Server CIM Over HT	TPS LDAP Client	SSH Server	
LDAP security:			
LDAP security: 🥝			
Disable secure LDAP			-
Certificate Management	9		
Signed Certificate status:	No certificate is ins No trusted certificate		
Signed Certificate status:	No certificate is ins		
Signed Certificate status:	No certificate is ins No trusted certific Actions		
Signed Certificate status: Trusted certificates:	No certificate is ins <u>No trusted certific</u> Actions f-signed Certificate	ates are installed	
Signed Certificate status: Trusted certificates: Generate a New Key and a Self	No certificate is ins <u>No trusted certific</u> Actions f-signed Certificate	ates are installed	
Signed Certificate status: Trusted certificates: Generate a New Key and a Self Generate a New Key and a Cer	No certificate is ins <u>No trusted certific</u> Actions f-signed Certificate	ates are installed	
Generate a New Key and a Cer Import a Signed Certificate	No certificate is ins <u>No trusted certific</u> Actions f-signed Certificate	ates are installed	0

Secure LDAP client certificate handling

Use the options under the Actions menu for LDAP over SSL certificate handling. If an option is disabled, you might need to perform another action first to enable it. While manipulating HTTPS certificates, you should disable the HTTPS server. For more information about certificate handling, see "SSL certificate handling" on page 80. Once you have installed the Trusted Certificate, you can enable LDAP over SSL as shown in the following illustration.

Notes:

- Changes to your IMM2 will take effect immediately.
- Your LDAP server must support Secure Socket Layer 3 (SSL3) or Transport Layer security (TLS) to be compatible with the IMM2 secure LDAP client.

MM Security onfigure security protocols suc Apply Reset Values	h as HTTPS and SSH. Manage security certificate	es.
HTTPS Server CIM Over HT	TPS LDAP Client SSH Server	
LDAP security:		
LDAP security:		1
Enable secure LDAP		
Certificate Management Signed Certificate status: Trusted certificates:	A self-signed certificate is installed. Trusted Certificate #1 is installed Download	I Replace Remove
	Actions	
Generate a New Key and a Sel	f-signed Certificate	0
Generate a New Key and a Cer	rtificate Signing Request (CSR)	0
Import a Signed Certificate		0
Import a Trusted Certificate		0
Download Certificate		0
Download Certificate Signing	Request (CSR)	0

Configuring the Secure Shell server

Click the **SSH Server** tab to configure the IMM2 web interface to use the more secure SSH protocol, rather than the default Telnet protocol.

Note:

- No certificate management is required to use this option.
- The IMM2 will initially create a SSH Server key. If you wish to generate a new SSH Server key, click **Generate SSH Server Private Host Key** in the Actions menu.
- After you complete the action, you must restart the IMM2 for your changes to take effect.

The SSH Server tab is shown in the following illustration.

MM Secu onfigure security Apply Reset	protocols such as H	TTPS and SSH.	. Manage secui	rity certificates.
HTTPS Server	CIM Over HTTPS	LDAP Client	SSH Server	
Enable SSH S	Server			
💟 Enable SSH S	erver 🥝			
Certificate Ma	anagement 🤍			
Key status: SSH	Server Key is installe	ed.		
		Actions		
Generate SSH S	erver Private Host K	ey		

SSL overview

SSL is a security protocol that provides communication privacy. SSL enables client/server applications to communicate in a way that is designed to prevent eavesdropping, tampering, and message forgery. You can configure the IMM2 to use SSL support for different types of connections, such as secure web server (HTTPS), secure LDAP connection (LDAPS), CIM over HTTPS, and SSH server. You can view or change the SSL settings from the Security option under the IMM Management tab. You can also enable or disable SSL and manage the certificates that are required for SSL.

SSL certificate handling

You can use SSL with a self-signed certificate or with a certificate that is signed by a third-party certificate authority. Using a self-signed certificate is the simplest method for using SSL; but, it does create a small security risk. The risk arises because the SSL client has no way of validating the identity of the SSL server for the first connection that is attempted between the client and server. For example, it is possible that a third party might impersonate the IMM2 web server and intercept data that is flowing between the actual IMM2 web server and the user's web browser. If, at the time of the initial connection between the browser and the IMM2, the self-signed certificate is imported into the certificate store of the browser, all future communications will be secure for that browser (assuming that the initial connection was not compromised by an attack).

For more complete security, you can use a certificate that is signed by a certificate authority (CA). To obtain a signed certificate, click **Generate a New Key and a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)** in the Actions menu. You must then send the certificate-signing request (CSR) to a CA and make arrangements to obtain a final certificate. When the final certificate is received, it is imported into the IMM2 by clicking **Import a Signed Certificate** in the Actions menu.

The function of the CA is to verify the identity of the IMM2. A certificate contains digital signatures for the CA and the IMM2. If a well-known CA issues the certificate or if the certificate of the CA has already been imported into the web browser, the browser can validate the certificate and positively identify the IMM2 web server.

The IMM2 requires a certificate for use with HTTPS Server, CIM over HTTPS, and the secure LDAP client. In addition the secure LDAP client also requires one or more trusted certificates to be imported. The trusted certificate is used by the secure LDAP client to positively identify the LDAP server. The trusted certificate is the certificate of the CA that signed the certificate of the LDAP server. If the LDAP server uses self-signed certificates, the trusted certificate can be the certificate of the LDAP server itself. Additional trusted certificates must be imported if more than one LDAP server is used in your configuration.

SSL certificate management

When managing IMM2 certificates, you are presented with a list of actions (or a subset of them), as shown in the following illustration.

Actions	
Generate a New Key and a Self-signed Certificate	0
Generate a New Key and a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)	0
Import a Signed Certificate	.0)
Import a Trusted Certificate	0
Download Certificate	0
Download Certificate Signing Request (CSR)	0

If a certificate is currently installed, you will be able to use the **Download Certificate** action in the Actions menu to download the currently installed certificate or CSR. Certificates that are grayed out are *not* currently installed. The secure LDAP client requires the user to import a trusted certificate. Click **Import a Trusted Certificate** in the Actions menu. After generation of a CSR, click **Import a Signed Certificate** in the Actions menu.

When performing one of the "Generate" actions, a Generate New Key and Self-signed Certificate window opens as shown in the following illustration.

Required SSL	Certificate Data	a)	
Country	US United States	7	۲
State or Province	NY	6	B)
City or Locality	New York	18	2
Organization Name	My Company	1	3)
IMM Host Name	imm1234	16	3
Optional SSL	. Certificate Data		
Optional SSL Contact Person	Certificate Data	0	3)
Contact Person	Chris Manager cmanager@mycomp.com		3)
Contact Person E-Mail address	Chris Manager cmanager@mycomp.com		<u>)</u>
Contact Person E-Mail address Organizational Unit	Chris Manager cmanager@mycomp.com		0
Contact Person E-Mail address Organizational Unit Surname	Chris Manager cmanager@mycomp.com		2) 2) 2)

The Generate New Key and Self-signed Certificate window will prompt you to complete the required and optional fields. You *must* complete the required fields. Once you have entered your information, click **Ok** to complete the task. A Certificate Generated window opens as shown in the following illustration.



Restoring and modifying your IMM configuration

Select the **IMM Configuration** option from the IMM Management tab for the options to perform the following actions:

- View an IMM2 configuration summary
- · Backup or restore the IMM2 configuration
- View backup or restore status
- Reset the IMM2 configuration to its factory default settings
- Access the IMM2 initial setup wizard

Restarting the IMM2

Select the **Restart IMM** option from the IMM Management tab to restart the IMM2. Only persons with supervisor authority can perform this function. When Ethernet connections are temporarily dropped, you must log in to the IMM2 to access the IMM2 web interface.

To restart the IMM2 complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2. For more information, see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8.
- 2. Click the IMM Management tab; then, click Restart IMM.
- **3**. Click the **OK** button on the Confirm Restart window. The IMM2 will be restarted.

The following illustration shows the Confirm Restart window.



When you restart the IMM2, your TCP/IP or modem connections are broken. The following illustration shows the notification window you will see when the IMM2 is being restarted.



4. Log in again to use the IMM2 web interface, (see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8 for instructions).

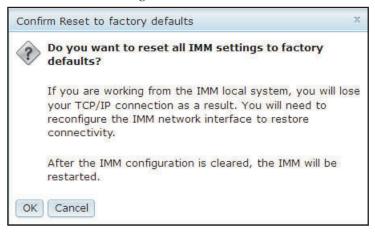
Resetting the IMM2 to the factory defaults

Select the **Reset IMM to factory defaults...** option from the IMM Management tab to restore the IMM2 to the factory default settings. Only persons with supervisor authority can perform this function. When Ethernet connections are temporarily dropped, you must log in to the IMM2 to access the IMM2 web interface.

Attention: When you use the Reset IMM to factory defaults option, you will lose all modifications that you have made to the IMM2.

To restore the IMM2 factory defaults, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2. For more information, see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8.
- 2. Click the IMM Management tab; then, click IMM Reset to factory defaults....
- **3**. Click the **OK** button on the Confirm Reset to factory defaults window as shown in the following illustration.



Note: After the IMM2 configuration is complete, the IMM2 will be restarted. If this is a local server, your TCP/IP connection will be broken and you must reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity.

- 4. Log in again to the IMM2 to use the IMM2 web interface, (see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8 for instructions).
- 5. Reconfigure the network interface to restore connectivity.

Activation management key

Click the **Activation Key Management** option from the IMM Management tab to manage activation keys for optional IMM2 and server Features on Demand (FoD) features. See Chapter 7, "Features on Demand," on page 125 for information about managing FoD activation keys.

Chapter 5. Monitoring the server status

This chapter provides information about how to view and monitor the information for the server that you are accessing.

Viewing the system status

The System Status page provides an overview of the operating status of the IMM2 server. This page also displays the hardware health of the server and any active events occurring on the server.

Note: If you access another page from the System Status page, you can return to the System Status page by clicking **System Status** from the menu items at the top of the page.

You can add a descriptive name to the IMM2 to assist you in identifying one IMM2 from another. Click the **Add System Descriptive Name...** link located below the server product name to designate a name to associate with the IMM2, as shown in the following illustration.

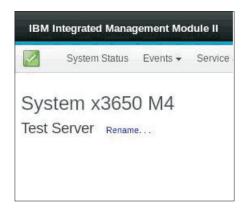


In the Change System Descriptive Name window, specify a name to associate with the IMM2 as shown in the following illustration.

IBM Integrated N	lanagement Module II	
System St	atus Events \star Service and Support \star Server Management \star IMM N	lanagement 👻 Search
	e Name nd Health page provides an at-a-glance overview of the operating status of t	
System Status	Change System Descriptive Name	x
System state: Sys	Edit the name of your system. This is a name used for descriptive purposes to help you identify your system.	
System Information	Test Server	System name must be specified
Active Events	OK Cancel	

You can rename the System Descriptive Name by clicking the **Rename...** link that is located next to the System Descriptive Name.

The following illustration shows the Rename link.



The System Status page displays the server power state and operating state. The status displayed is the server state at the time the System Status page is opened.

The following illustration shows the Power and System state fields.



The server can be in one of the system states listed in the following table.

State	Description
System power off/State unknown	The server is powered off.
System on/starting UEFI	The server is powered on; but, UEFI is not running.
System running in UEFI	The server is powered on and UEFI is running.
System stopped in UEFI	The server is powered on; UEFI has detected a problem and has stopped running.
Booting OS or in unsupported OS	The server might be in this state for one of the following reasons:
	• The operating system (OS) loader has started; but, the OS is not running
	• The IMM2 Ethernet over USB interface is disabled.
	• The OS does not have the drivers loaded that support the Ethernet over USB interface.
OS booted	The server OS is running.

Table 5. System state descriptions (continued)

State	Description
1	The server has been placed in standby or sleep state.

The following menu choices on the System Status page provide additional server information and actions that can be performed on the server.

- System Information
- Power Actions
- Remote Control, (see "Remote presence and remote control functions" on page 95 for additional information).
- Latest OS Failure Screen, (see "Capturing the latest OS failure screen data" on page 124 for additional information).

Viewing the system information

The System Information menu provides a summary of common server information. Click the **System Information** tab on the System Status page to view the following information:

- Machine name
- Machine type
- Model
- Serial number
- Universally Unique Identifier (UUID)
- · Server power
- Server state
- Total hours powered on
- Restart count
- Ambient temperature
- Enclosure identity LED
- Check log LED

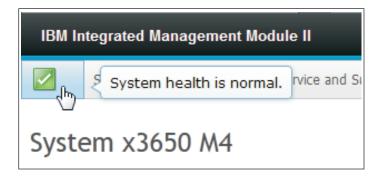
The following illustration shows the System Information window.

System Information (Quick View
Name	Value
Machine Name	System x3650 M4
Machine Type	7915
Model	35Z
Serial Number	06CNZ40
JUD	E596B684B75E11E0A0B0E41F13EB0F72
Server Power	On
Server State	System running in UEFI
Total hours powered-on	117
Restart count	6
Ambient Temperature	80.60 F / 27.00 C
Enclosure Identify LED	Off Change
Check Log LED	Off

Viewing the server health

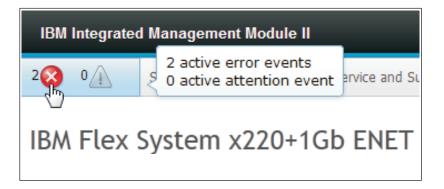
The server health is displayed under the title bar in the upper left corner of the System Status page and is designated by an icon. A green check mark indicates that the server hardware is operating normally. Move your cursor over the green checkmark to get a quick indication of the server health.

The following illustration is an example of a server in a normal mode of operation.



A yellow triangle icon indicates that a warning condition exists. A red circle icon indicates that an error condition exists.

The following illustration is an example of a server with active error events.



If a warning icon (yellow triangle) or error icon (red circle) is displayed, click the icon to display the corresponding events in the Active Events section of the System Status page.

The following illustration is an example of the Active Events section with error conditions.

Active Events				
Severity	-	Source	Date	Message
🔇 Error		System	16 Jul 2012 01:00:28.000 PM	Sensor Mezz Exp 2 Fault has transitioned to critical from a less severe state.
😣 Error		System	16 Jul 2012 01:00:29.000 PM	Sensor Mezz Exp 2 Fault has transitioned to critical from a less severe state.

Viewing the hardware health

The Hardware Health section of the System Status page list the server hardware components and displays the health status of each component that is monitored by the IMM2. The health status displayed for a component might reflect the most critical state of all individual components for a component type. For example, a server might have several power modules installed and all of the power modules are operating normally except for one. The status for the Power Modules component will indicate critical because of the power module that is not operating normally.

The following illustration shows the Hardware Health section of the System Status page.

Hardware Health 🥥	
Component Type	Status
Cooling Devices	Normal
Power Modules	🔇 Critical
Disks	Normal
Processors	Normal
Memory	🔽 Normal
System	Normal 🛛

Each component type is displayed as a link that can be clicked to obtain more detailed information. When you select a Component Type to view, a table listing the status of all components for that Component Type is displayed.

The following illustration shows the components for the Memory Component Type.

Memory Display the memory	/ modules available on the	server. Clicking on a module	displays a Properties pop-up window	with 2 tabs:
FRU Name	▲ Status	Туре	Capacity (GB)	
DIMM 4	Normal	DDR3	4	
DIMM 9	Normal	DDR3	4	
DIMM 16	Normal	DDR3	4	
DIMM 21	Normal	DDR3	4	

You can click on an individual Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) link in the table to obtain additional information for that component. All active events for the component are then displayed in the Events tab.

The following illustration shows the Events tab for DIMM 4.

operties fo		
Events	Hardware Information	
There are	no active events for this device	
lose		

If applicable, additional information for the component might be provided in the Hardware Information tab.

The following illustration shows the Hardware Information tab for DIMM 4.

Events	Hardwa	re Information	
Descriptio	n	DIMM 4	
PartNumb	er	M393B5773CH0-YH	9
FRU Serial	Number	8634E095	
Manuf Dat	e	2211	
Туре		DDR3	
Size		2 GB	

Chapter 6. Performing IMM2 tasks

You can use the information in this section and Chapter 3, "IMM2 web user interface overview," on page 13 to perform the following tasks to control the IMM2.

From the System Status tab, you can perform the following tasks:

- View the server health
- View the server information, for example, the machine name and type, and serial number
- View server power and restart activity
- Remotely control the power status of the server
- Remotely access the server console
- · Remotely attach a disk or disk image to the server
- View active events
- View the hardware health of the server components

Note: The System Status page is displayed after logging in to the IMM2. Common information and actions are colocated on this page.

From the Events tab, you can perform the following tasks:

- Manage event log history
- · Manage event recipients for email notifications
- · Manage event recipients for syslog notifications

From the Services and Support tab, you can perform the following task:

• Manually obtain the service data for your server

From the Server Management tab, you can select options to perform the following tasks:

- From the Server Firmware option, view and update the firmware levels of server components.
- From the Remote Control option, remotely view and interact with the server console:
 - Remotely control the power status of the server
 - Remotely access the server console
 - Remotely attach a CD drive, DVD drive, diskette drive, USB flash drive or disk image to the server
- From the Server Properties option, you can set parameters to assist in identifying the server.
- From the Server Power Actions option, you can perform such actions as power on, power off, and restart.
- From the Disks option, you can view hard disk drives and events associated with the hard disk drives installed in the server.
- From the Memory option, you can view information about the memory modules installed in the server.

- From the Processor option, you can view information about the microprocessors installed in the server.
- From the Server Timeouts option, you can set timeouts to ensure the server does not hang indefinitely during a firmware update or powering on of the server.
- From the PXE Network Boot option, you can set up attempts to preboot the server Execution Environment.
- From the Latest OS Failure Screen option, you can capture the OS failure screen data and store it.

Controlling the power status of the server

The Power Actions option contains a list of actions that you can take to control the server power as shown in the following illustration. You can choose to power the server on immediately or at a scheduled time. You can also choose to shut down and restart the operating system.

IBM Integrated Management Module II		USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
		USERIO	Sounds I cog out	
System Status Events - Service and Support - Server Management	IMM Management + Search, 11			
V 2				
Server Actions				
Current server power state: ON				
Actions				
Power On Server Immediately				
Power On Server at Specified Date and Time				
Power Off Server Immediately				
Shut down OS and then Power Off Server				
Shut down OS and then Restart Server				
Restart the Server Immediately				
Restart the Server with Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI)				
Schedule Daily/Weekly Power and Restart Actions				

Complete the following steps to perform server power and restart actions:

- 1. Access the Power Actions menu by performing one of the following steps:
 - Click the Power Actions tab on the System Status page.
 - Click Server Power Actions from the Server Management tab.
- 2. Select the server action from the Actions menu list.

The following table contains a description of the power and restart actions that can be performed on the server.

Table 6. Power actions and descriptions

Power Action	Description
Power on server immediately	Select this action item to power on the server and boot the operating system.
Power on server at specified date and time	Select this action item to schedule the server to automatically power on at a specific date and time.
Power off server immediately	Select this action item to power off the server without shutting down the operating system.
Shut down operating system and then power off server ¹	Select this action item to shut down the operating system and power off the server.
Shut down operating system and then restart server ¹	Select this action item to reboot the operating system.
Restart the server immediately	Select this action item to power cycle the server immediately without shutting down the operating system.

Table 6. F	Power actions	and descriptions	(continued)
------------	---------------	------------------	-------------

Power Action	Description
Restart the server with non-maskable interrupt (NMI)	Select this action item to force an NMI on a "hung" system. Selection of this action item allows the platform operating system to perform a memory dump that can be used for debug purposes of the system hang condition. The IMM2 firmware uses the auto reboot on the NMI setting from the UEFI F1 in the Setup menu to determine if a reboot after the NMI is needed.
Schedule daily/weekly power and restart actions	Select this action item to schedule daily and weekly power and restart actions for the server.
	aver or locked mode when a "Shut Down" ot be able to initiate a normal shutdown. The lown after the power off delay interval expires

Remote presence and remote control functions

You can use the IMM2 Remote Control feature or remote presence function in the IMM2 web interface to view and interact with the server console. You can assign to the server a CD or DVD drive, diskette drive, USB flash drive, or a disk image that is on your computer. The remote presence functionality is available with the IMM2 Premium features and is only available through the IMM2 web interface. You must log in to the IMM2 with a user ID that has Supervisor access to use any of the remote control features. For more information about upgrading from IMM2 Basic or IMM2 Standard to IMM2 Premium, see "Upgrading IMM2" on page 3. Refer to the documentation that came with your server for information about the level of IMM2 that is installed in your server.

Use the remote control features to do the following:

while the operating system might still be running.

- Remotely view video with graphic resolution up to 1600 x 1200 at 75 Hz, regardless of the server state.
- Remotely access the server using the keyboard and mouse from a remote client.
- Map the CD or DVD drive, diskette drive, and USB flash drive on a remote client and map ISO and diskette image files as virtual drives that are available for use by the server.
- Upload a diskette image to the IMM2 memory and map it to the server as a virtual drive.

Updating your IMM2 firmware and Java or ActiveX applet

This section provides information about updating the firmware and Java and ActiveX applet.

Important: The IMM2 uses a Java applet or an ActiveX applet to perform the remote presence function. When the IMM2 is updated to the latest firmware level, the Java applet and the ActiveX applet are also updated to the latest level. By default, Java caches (stores locally) applets that were previously used. After a flash update of the IMM2 firmware, the Java applet that the server uses might not be at the latest level.

To correct this problem, turn off caching. The method used will vary based on the platform and Java version. The following steps are for Oracle Java 1.5 on Windows:

- 1. Click Start -> Settings -> Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Java Plug-in 1.5. The Java Plug-in Control Panel window opens.
- 3. Click the **Cache** tab.
- 4. Choose one of the following options:
 - Clear the Enable Caching check box so that Java caching is always disabled.
 - Click **Clear Caching**. If you choose this option, you must click **Clear Caching** after each IMM2 firmware update.

For more information about updating IMM2 firmware, see "Updating the server firmware" on page 107.

Enabling the remote presence function

The IMM2 remote presence function is available only in IMM2 Premium. For more information about upgrading from IMM Standard to IMM Premium, see "Upgrading IMM2" on page 3.

To enable the remote presence feature, complete the following steps:

- 1. Disconnect the power from the server by unplugging the power cord.
- 2. Install the virtual media key into the dedicated slot on the system board.
- **3**. Reconnect the power to the server.

Note: Approximately 2 minutes after the server is connected to ac power, the power-control button becomes active.

4. Turn on the server.

Remote control screen capture

The screen capture feature in the Video Viewer window captures the video display contents of the server. To capture and save a screen image, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click File.
- 2. Select Capture to File from the menu.
- **3.** When you are prompted, enter a name for the image file and save it to the location that you choose on the local client.

Note: Screen capture images are saved as JPG or JPEG file types.

The following illustration shows the window where you specify the location for the image file and enter the name of the image file.

000	🗆 s	ave		MM Sustem Eu	ent Loa		×	<u> </u>
1001	0.0001		My Document	s	-	a û		:52
000	0x0003 📑	a		My Videos				s: 10
1001		Access Co		📑 Snaglt Cat	alog			
70.00	0x0005 == 0x0006 ==			der 📑 Updater5				
000	00007	Download						
10:01	0.0000	My eBooks	5					
7041	0,0000	My Music						
000	0x000A	My Picture	S					
10.01	0x000B							
1001		Name:						
000	0x000D File	s of <u>Type</u> :	*.jpg or *.jpe	a files			-	
1001	OXOOOL				0:			
-00	17.17 1100					Save	Cancel	
000	t∔=Move							
1000	in the the the	State of the local division of the local div						

Remote control Video Viewer modes

To change the view of the Video Viewer window, click **View**. The following menu options are available:

Hide Status Bar

Hide the status bar that shows the state of the caps lock, num lock and scroll lock keys. This option is available only when the status bar is shown.

Show Status Bar

Show the status bar that displays the state of the caps lock, num lock and scroll lock keys. This option is available only when the status bar is hidden.

Refresh

The Video Viewer redraws the video display with the video data from the server.

Full Screen

The Video Viewer fills the client desktop with the video display. This option is available only when the Video Viewer is not in full screen mode.

Windowed

The Video Viewer switches out of full screen mode into windowed mode. This option is available only while the Video Viewer is in full screen mode.

Fit The Video Viewer resizes to completely display the target desktop without an extra border or scroll bars. This requires that the client desktop be large enough to display the resized window.

Remote control video color mode

If your connection to the remote server has limited bandwidth, you can reduce the bandwidth demand of the Video Viewer by adjusting the color settings in the Video Viewer window.

Note: The IMM2 has a menu item that allows for color depth adjustment to reduce the data that is transmitted in low-bandwidth situations. This menu item replaces the bandwidth slider used in the Remote Supervisor Adapter II interface.

To change the video color mode, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click View.
- 2. Click **Color Mode**. Two color-mode options are available as shown in the following illustration:
 - Color: 7, 9, 12, 15, and 23-bit
 - Grayscale: 16, 32, 64, and 128 shades

Refresh Full Screen Fit	11101101100110	0110101001010100011011010101000111001010	
Color Mode → Adapters and Integrated M Processors Memory Devices and Power Operating Mo Legacy Suppo System Secur Recovery Storage Network Driver Healt	lanagement N I/O Ports odes ort ∙ity	7 bit 9 bit 12 bit 15 bit 23 bit	This option is only
†↓=Move Hi	ighlight	<enter< td=""><td>->=Select Entry Esc=Exit</td></enter<>	->=Select Entry Esc=Exit
III Inform	ational Euen	t(s) Det	tected, Check POST Event Viewer

3. Select the Color or Grayscale setting.

Remote control keyboard support

The operating system on the client server that you are using traps certain key combinations, such as Ctrl+Alt+Del in Microsoft Windows, instead of transmitting them to the server. Other keys, such as F1, might cause an action on your computer as well as on the server.

To use key combinations that affect the remote server, and not the local client, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click Macros.
- Select one of the predefined key combinations from the menu, or select Soft Key to choose or add a user-defined key combination as shown in the following illustration.

1000038	Ctrl-Alt-Del Alt-Tab Alt-ESC	01110110110001110011011000110000110 011001101010010	
OCTIE .	Ctrl-ESC Alt-Space	System Configuration and Boot	: Management
10001	Alt-Enter Alt-Hyphen Alt-F4	ion	This selection
10000	PrtScm Alt-PrtScm		displays the basic details of the System.
10001	F1 Pause Tab		
roone .	A Contract of the second se	gs	
OCTE 1	Alt-SysReq Alt-LShift-RShift-Esc	s	
0000	Ctrl-Alt-Backspace Alt-F? Ctrl-Alt-F?	ttings	
10001	Soft Key → T↓=Move Highlig	ht <enter>=Select Entry</enter>	<pre><esc>=Exit Setup</esc></pre>
	2		

Use the Video Viewer **Macros** menu item to create and edit customized buttons that can be used to send key strokes to the server.

To create and edit customized buttons, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click Macros.
- 2. Select Soft Key and then select Add. A new window opens.
- **3**. Click **New** to add a new key combination, or select a key combination and click **Delete** to remove an existing key combination.
- 4. If you are adding a new combination, type the key combination that you want to define in the window that opens after selecting **New**; then, click **OK**.
- 5. When you are finished defining or removing key combinations, click OK.

International keyboard support

The Video Viewer uses platform-specific native code to intercept key events to access the physical key information directly. The client detects the physical key events and passes them along to the server. The server detects the same physical keystrokes that the client experienced and supports all standard keyboard layouts with the only limitation that the target and client use the same keyboard layout. If a remote user has a different keyboard layout from the server, the user can switch the server layout while it is being accessed remotely and then switch back again.

Keyboard pass-through mode

The keyboard pass-through mode disables the handling of most special key combinations on the client so that they can be passed directly to the server. This provides an alternative to using the macros.

Some operating systems define certain keystrokes to be outside the control of an application, so the behavior of the pass-through mechanism operates independently of the server. For example, in a Linux X session, the Ctrl+Alt+F2 keystroke combination switches to Virtual Console 2. There is no mechanism to

intercept this keystroke sequence and; therefore, no way for the client to pass these keystrokes directly to the target. The only option in this case is to use the keyboard macros defined for this purpose.

To enable or disable the keyboard pass-through mode, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click Tools.
- 2. Select Session Options from the menu.
- 3. When the Session Options window opens, click the General tab.
- 4. Select the **Pass all keystrokes to target** check box to enable or disable the keyboard pass-through mode.
- 5. Click OK to save the choice.

Remote control mouse support

The Video Viewer window offers several options for mouse control, including absolute mouse control, relative mouse control, and single cursor mode.

Absolute and relative mouse control

To access the absolute and relative options for controlling the mouse, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Remote Control window, click Tools.
- 2. Select Session Options from the menu.
- **3**. When the Session Options window opens, click the **Mouse** tab as shown in the following illustration.

0x0001 0x0002 0x0003 0x0004 0x0005 0x0006 0x0007 0x0008 0x0009 0x0004 0x0008 0x0000 0x0000 0x0000	Sus General Mouse Browser Sus Single Cursor Termination Key: F12 Sus Sus Mouse Mode Sus Absolute Sus Relative Sus Relative Sus Relative (default Linux acceleration) Sus OK Apply	4:21:52 dress: 10 1B 4 nt
001	:Highlight Esc=Exit	

- 4. Select one of the following Mouse Modes:
 - Absolute:

The client sends mouse location messages to the server that are always relative to the origin (upper left area) of the viewing area.

• Relative:

The client sends the mouse location as an offset from the previous location.

• Relative (default Linux acceleration):

The client applies an acceleration factor to align the mouse better on Linux targets. The acceleration settings have been selected to maximize compatibility with Linux distributions.

Single cursor mode

Some operating systems do not align the local and remote cursors, which results in offsets between the local and remote mouse cursors. The single cursor mode hides the local client cursor while the mouse is within the Video Viewer window. When the single cursor mode is activated, you see only the remote cursor. To enable the single cursor mode, click **Tools > Single Cursor** from the Video Viewer window.

Note: When the Video Viewer is in the single cursor mode, you cannot use the mouse to switch to another window or click outside the KVM client window, because there is no local cursor.

To disable the single cursor mode, click the **Defined Termination** key. To view the defined termination key, or change the termination key, click **Tools > Session Options > Mouse**.

Remote power control

You can send server power and restart commands from the Video Viewer window without returning to the web browser. To control the server power with the Video Viewer, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window, click **Tools**.
- 2. Click Power. Select one of the following commands:
 - **On** Turns on the server power.

Off Turns off the server power.

Reboot

Restarts the server.

Cycle Turns the server power off, then back on.

Viewing performance statistics

To view the Video Viewer performance statistics from the Video Viewer window, click **Tools**; then, click **Stats**. The following information is displayed:

Frame Rate

A running average of the number of frames, decoded per second by the client.

Bandwidth

A running average of the total number of kilobytes per second received by the client.

Compression

A running average of the bandwidth reduction due to video compression. This value is often displayed as 100.0%. It is rounded to the tenth of a percent.

Packet Rate

A running average of the number of video packets received per second.

Starting Remote Desktop Protocol

If the Windows-based Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) client is installed, you can use a RDP client instead of the KVM client. The remote server must be configured to receive RDP connections.

Knock-knock feature description

When all of the possible remote control sessions are occupied (one single-user mode option or four multi-user mode option), another web user might be able to send a disconnection request to the remote control user who has enabled the Knock-knock feature and if that user is not handling a disconnection request from other web user.

If the remote control user who has enabled the Knock-knock feature accepts the request or does not reply to the request within the timeout value, the remote control session will be terminated and will be reserved for the web user sending the request. If the web user sending the disconnection request does not launch a Java or ActiveX remote control session with the reserved remote control session within five minutes, the remote control session is no longer reserved for the web user.

To enable the Knock-knock feature complete the following steps:

- 1. Access the Remote Control page by selecting one of the following menu choices:
 - Click Remote Control from the Server Management tab.
 - Click Remote Control... on the System Status page.
- 2. Click the Allow others to request my remote session disconnect checkbox.

Note: There must exist one or more additional users selecting the **Allow others to request my remote session disconnect** checkbox when using the remote control feature.

- 3. Select a time interval from the No response time interval field.
- 4. Start the remote control session by selecting the user mode. Select one of the following modes:
 - Start remote control in single-user mode
 - Start remote control in multi-user mode

Note: The Knock-knock feature is automatically enabled.

The following illustration shows the fields described in steps 2 through 4.

e session disconnect @	
1 hour	
er mode	
mode	
	1 hour r mode e remote session.

To request a remote session complete the following steps:

1. Click Refresh to display the Remote Control session that is in progress.

The following illustration shows the Remote Control Session in Progress window.

Remote Control Session in Progress				
If all sessions are currently consumed, you can send a request to disconnect one of the available sessions.		ons.	Refresh	
User Name 🔺	Active Sessions	Availability for Disconnection	Timeout Value	
USERID	192.168.5.11	Request to connect	1 hour	

You will see one of the following responses in the **Availability for Disconnection** field:

- **Request to connect:** This text is displayed when the remote control user enables the Knock-knock feature and is not handling a disconnection request from another web user. The current web user has not sent a disconnection request to the remote control user.
- Waiting for response: This text is displayed when the remote control user is handling the disconnection request from the current web user. The current web user can send a cancel request to the remote control user by clicking the **Cancel** button.
- Other request is pending: This text is displayed for one of the following conditions:
 - The remote control user is handling the disconnection request from another web user.
 - The remote control user enabled the Knock-knock feature and the current web user is waiting for the response of the disconnection request from another remote control user.
- Not available: This text is displayed under one of the following conditions:
 - All of the remote control sessions are not occupied. Whether the remote control user has or has not enabled the Knock-knock feature, has no effect on this condition.
 - All of the remote control sessions are occupied and the remote control user has not enable the Knock-knock feature.
 - This remote control connection is reserved for another user for five minutes.
- 2. Click **Request to connect** to send a disconnection request to the remote control user.

The following illustration shows the window that is displayed when the request is successfully sent.

Sendrequest	x
Your request has been sent successfu Please wait for the response from the r	
Close	

If the remote control user accepts the disconnect request, the web user must start the remote control session within five minutes. If the web user does not start the session within five minutes, the session will not be reserved. The following figures show the windows displayed when the disconnect request is accepted.

The following illustration shows the disconnect request in a reserved state.



The following illustration shows the disconnect request in an unreserved state.

The request to disconnect	remote session has bee	en accented
	ond, the option to start	
control session will be disa	bled.	

If the remote control user denies the disconnection request, the user submitting the disconnect request will receive information stating that the request is denied as shown in the following illustration.

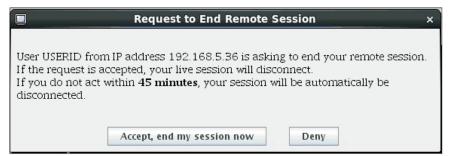
Reque	estis denied	×
	Your request to disconnect the remote session has been denied.	
Clo	se	

If the web user attempts to log out of the IMM2 before receiving a message about their request, the web user will receive a message as shown in the following illustration.

Warning	g to terminate the remote session request 🛛 🗶
×	A remote session disconnect request is currently in progress. Logging out of the IMM2 web will terminate this request.
ОК	Cancel

After the remote control user receives the request, the user must determine whether to release the remote session in the interval time selected before starting the remote control session. A Request to End Remote Session window is displayed to remind the remote control user of any time remaining.

The Request to End Remote Session window is shown in the following illustration.



If the remote control user selects **Accept**, **end my session now**, the remote viewer will automatically close. If the remote control user selects **Deny**, the remote control user will continue to keep the remote session. After the Request to End Remote Session is ended, the remote session will be released automatically and the following window is displayed.

	Timeout of Remote Session
(i)	A request to end your session has timed out waiting for your response. Your remote session has ended automatically.
	ОК

Remote disk

From the Virtual Media Session window, you can assign to the server a CD or DVD drive, a diskette drive, USB flash drive that is on your computer, or you can specify a disk image on your computer for the server to use. You can use the drive for functions such as restarting (booting) the server, updating code, installing new software on the server, and installing or updating the operating system on the server. You can access the remote disk. Drives and disk images are displayed as USB drives on the server.

Notes:

- The following server operating systems have USB support. USB support is required for the remote disk functionality.
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2003: Web, Std, Ent, DC (SP2, R2, SBS)
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 SP2: Std, SBS, EBS
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
 - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server V10 SP3: x86_64
 - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server V11: x86,_64
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux Enterprise Servers V3.7: x86, x86_64
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux Enterprise Servers V4.8: x86, x86_64
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux Enterprise Servers V5.5: x86, x86_64
 - Red Hat Enterprise Linux Enterprise Servers V6.0: x86, x86_64
 - ESX 4.5: 4.0 U1
- The client server requires the Java 1.5 Plug-in or later.
- The client server must have an Intel Pentium III microprocessor or greater, operating at 700 MHz or faster, or equivalent.

Accessing the Remote Control

To begin a remote control session and access the remote disk, complete the following steps:

- 1. In the Video Viewer window click Tools.
- 2. Click Launch Virtual Media. The Video Viewer window opens.

Note: If the **Encrypt disk and KVM data during transmission** check box was selected before the Video Viewer window was opened, the disk data will be encrypted with ADES encryption.

The Virtual Media Session window is separate from the Video Viewer window. The Virtual Media Session window lists all of the drives on the client that can be mapped as remote drives. The Virtual Media Session window also allows you to map ISO and diskette image files as virtual drives. Each mapped drive can be marked as read-only. The CD and DVD drives and ISO images are always read-only.

Mapping and unmapping drives

To map a drive, select the **Select** check box next to the drive that you want to map.

Note: A CD or DVD drive must contain media before it is mapped. If the drive is empty, you are prompted to insert a CD or DVD into the drive.

Click the **Mount Selected** button to mount and map the selected drive or drives. If you click **Add Image**, diskette image files and ISO image files can be added to the list of available drives. After the diskette or ISO image file is listed in the Virtual Media Session window, it can be mapped just like the other drives. To unmap the drives, click the **Unmount All** button. Before the drives are unmapped, you must confirm that you want the drives to be unmapped.

Note: After you confirm that you want the drives to be unmapped, all of the drives are unmounted. You cannot unmount drives individually.

Once an image is added to the list and the **Map** checkbox is selected (if the image is suitable for loading to IMM2 memory for the RDOC feature) a window opens, giving the option to transfer the image to the server. If you select **Yes**, enter a name for the image.

Note: Do not enter special characters such as an ampersand (&) or spaces in the name.

Uploading an image to IMM2 memory enables the disk to remain mounted on the server so that you can access the disk later, even after the IMM2 web interface session has ended. Multiple images can be stored on the IMM2; but, the total space used cannot exceed 50 Mb. To unload the image file from memory, select the name in the RDOC Setup window and click **Delete**.

Exiting Remote Control

Close the Video Viewer and the Virtual Media Session windows when you have finished using the Remote Control feature.

Setting up PXE network boot

Use the PXE Network Boot option to set up attempts to preboot the server Execution Environment. Perform the following steps to set up your server to attempt a Preboot Execution Environment network boot at the next server restart.

- 1. Log in to the IMM2. For more information, see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8 for additional information.
- 2. Click Server Management; then, select PXE Network Boot.

The following window is displayed.



3. Select **Attempt PXE Network Boot at next server restart** from the Action options. The following window is displayed.



If you wish to cancel the selection, click **CancelPxeBoot**. The following Confirm Cancel window is displayed.

IBM Integrated Management Module II		USERID	Settings Log out	IBM.
System Status Events - Service and Su	port 👻 Server Management 🗶 INN Management 👻 Search			
boot sequence will be altered for this boot attempt on				
Contract of Contra	Confirm Cancel ×			
CancePixeBoot Actions Attempt PXE Network Boot at next server nestart	This will cancel the PXE Boot at the next server restart: Proceed? OK Cancel			
Restart Immediately and attempt PXE Network Boot Shut down OS, Restart, and attempt PXE Network Bo	a			

Updating the server firmware

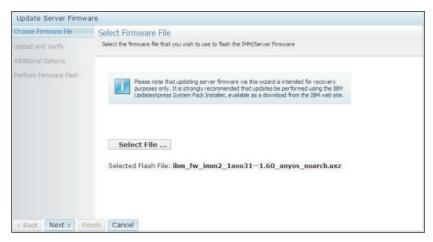
The Server Firmware option displays firmware levels and allows you to update the DSA, IMM2, and UEFI firmware. The current versions of the IMM2, UEFI, and DSA firmware are displayed. This includes the Active, Primary, and Backup versions.

The following illustration shows the Server Firmware page.

System Status	Events - Servic	e and Support 👻 Server Mani	gement + IMM Management + Search	
erver Firmw	are			
	on various server cor	mponents, including the IMM its	ef.	
Update Firmware				
Firmware Type	 Version 	Build	Release Date	
DSA	9.23	DSYTA3C	10 Jul 2012	
MM2 (Active)	1.60	1A0031L	18 Jul 2012	
MM2 (Primary)	1.60	1A0031L	18 Jul 2012	
MM2 (Backup)	1.53	1A0029Z	16 Jul 2012	
JEFI (Active)	1.10	KOE115-US	12 Jul 2012	
	1.10	KOE115-US	12 Jul 2012	
JEFI (Primary)				

To update the server firmware complete the following steps:

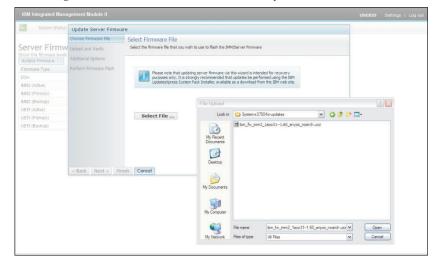
- 1. Click Server Firmware from the Server Management menu list.
- 2. Click **Update Firmware**. The Update Server Firmware window opens as shown in the following illustration.



- 3. Read the warning notice before continuing with the next step.
- 4. Perform one of the following steps:
 - Click Cancel and return to the previous Server Firmware window.
 - Click **Select File...** to select the firmware file that you want to use to flash the server firmware.

Note: All other options are grayed out when the Update Server Firmware window initially opens.

When you click **Select File...**, a File Upload window opens as shown in the following illustration. This window allows you to browse to the desired file.



5. Navigate to the file you want to select and click **Open**. You are returned to the Update Server Firmware window with the selected file displayed as shown in the following illustration.



6. Click **Next** > to begin the upload and verify process on the selected file. A progress meter will be displayed as the file is being uploaded and verified as shown in the following illustration.

Update Server Firmw.	are
Choose Firmware File	Upload and Verify
Upload and Verify	The firmware file is being uploaded. You will have an opportunity to verify it is the correct file prior to the flashing procedure.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Fash	Upload and Verify Firmware File Uploading firmware file 'Ibm_fw_imm2_1aoo311.60_anyos_noarch.uxz'
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel

You can view this status window to verify that the file you selected to update is the correct file. The status window will have information regarding the type of firmware file that is to be updated such as DSA, IMM, or UEFI.

After the firmware file is uploaded and verified successfully, a Successful upload window opens as shown in the following illustration.

Update Server Firmw.	If so
Choose Firmware File	Upload and Verify
Upload and Verify	The firmware file is being uploaded. You will have an opportunity to verify it is the correct file prior to the flashing procedure
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flash	
	Successful upload.
	The firmware image ibm_fw_inm2_laoo311.60_anyos_noarch.uxz' was successfully uploaded and verified.
	The uploaded file was detected as a IMM firmware file with Build ID 1A0031L. The current Build ID in the primary area is 1A0031L. The current Build ID in the badua prace is 1A00292.
	If this is correct, click the Next button to continue the firmware update procedure.
< Back Next > Fi	hish Cancel

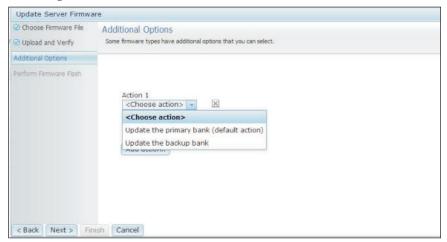
7. Click **Next** > if the information is correct. Click < **Back** if you want to redo any of the selections.

If you click **Next** >, a set of additional options are displayed as shown in the following illustration.

Update Server Firmwa	are	
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.	
Additional Options		
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 1 <choose action=""></choose>	
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel	

To update the primary (default bank) or backup bank of flash, complete the following steps.

8. Click the **Choose action** list item in the **Action 1** field as shown in the following illustration.



After you select an option, you are returned to the previous screen with the requested additional option displayed. The following illustration shows the selection of the Update the primary bank (default action) list item.

Update Server Firmwa	are
Choose Firmware File	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Upload and Verify	some inmitare types have audiconal options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flach	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action)
< Back Next > Fir	hish Cancel

After the selected option is loaded, that option and an **Action 2** field are presented as shown in the following illustration.

 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Fash	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action) Action 2 Choose action> X Add action

- 9. Click the **Choose action** list item in the **Action 2** field.
- The following illustration shows the selection of the Update the backup bank list item for the Action 2 field. Click Next > to simultaneously update the primary and backup banks.

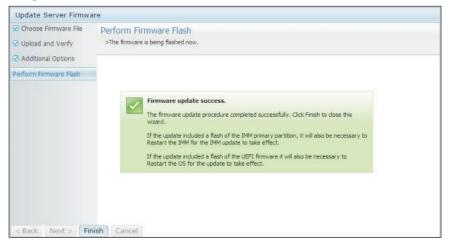
Note: To remove an option and start the additional option process again, click the **X** to the right of the **Choose action** list item.

Update Server Firmw	are
Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify	Additional Options Some firmware types have additional options that you can select.
Additional Options	
Perform Firmware Flash	Action 1 Update the primary bank (default action) + Action 2 Update the backup bank +
	Add action
< Back Next > Fi	nish Cancel

A progress meter shows the progress of the update for the primary and backup banks, as shown in the following illustration.

Update Server Firmwa	are		
Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify Additional Options Perform Firmware Flash	Perform Firmware >The firmware is being f Action 1 of 2: 'Upda' Action 2 of 2: 'Upda'	lashed now. te the primary bank (default action)'	
	State .	27%	
< Back Next > Fit	nish Cancel		

A Firmware update success window is opened when the firmware update is complete.



11. Click Finish to return to the main Update Server Firmware window.

If you had chosen to not select any additional options, the default is to load the primary bank.

A progress meter window indicating the update progress and a Firmware update success window open as shown in the following illustrations.

Update Server Firmw	are
 Choose Firmware File Upload and Verify 	Perform Firmware Flash >The firmware is being flashed now.
Additional Options	Action 1 of 1: 'Default Firmware Flash'
Perform Firmware Flash	
	50%
< Back Next > Fi	nish Cancel



Managing system events

The Events menu enables you to manage the Event Log history and manage Event Recipients for email and syslog notifications.

Managing the event log

Click the **Event Log** option to display the Event Log window. The Event Log window includes a description of the events that are reported by the IMM2 and information about all remote access attempts and configuration changes. All events in the log are time stamped using the IMM2 date and time settings. Some events generate alerts, if they are configured to do so on the Event Recipients window. You can also sort and filter events in the event log.

Click the **Event Log** option. The following window displays.



After selection of the Event Log option, the following window opens.

System St	tabue Evente	- Service and Support - Service	Management - IMM Management -	Catero			
System St	Latus Events	 Service and Support Service and Support 	Management • Imm Management •				
Event Log	the contents o	f the TMM event log, and allows you b	n cort and filter the lon. By default the	log entries are displayed in reverse chronological order (mo	t recent lon	entry first) For each lon e	ntov th
evenity of the even Export Dele	t is displayed al	ong with a timestamp, source and a to	ext mess more				
Filter Events	te Events						
Fiter Events							
		Go					
Severity	Source	Date	Event ID	Message			
				WEB Client at IP address 9.44.77.109.	~		
🚺 Informational	Power	18 Jul 2012 02:16:39.145 PM	0x816f00091381ffff	Host Power has been turned on.			
🔝 Informational	Power	18 Jul 2012 02:16:22.086 PM	0x806f00091381ffff	Host Power has been turned off.			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:15:22.062 PM	0x4000000e00000000	Remote Login Successful. Login ID: USERID fro webguis at IP address 169.254.95.120.	it		
👔 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:43.478 PM	0x4000001600000000	ENET[CIM:ep1] DHCP-HSTN=IMM2- e41f13d90831. DN=raleigh.ibm.com, IP@=9.37.189.59, SN=255.255.240.0, GW@=9.37.176.1, DNS1@=9.0.128.50.			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:41.357 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-3 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:37.127 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-2 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚮 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:34.823 PM	0x4000004b00000000	SNMPv1 Community-1 set by user : Name=, AccessType=Read Only, Address=, .			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:32.019 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet[IBM:ep2] interface is now active.			
🚹 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:28.060 PM	0x4000001700000000	ENET[CIM:ep2] IP-Cfg:HstName=IMM2- e41113d90631, IP@=169.254.95.118 .NetMsk=255.255.00, GW@=0.0.0.	9		
🚮 Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:25.740 PM	0x4000003700000000	ENET[CIM.ep1] IPv6-LinkLocal HstName=IMM2- e41f13d90631, IP@=fe80::e61f.13fffed9:0631 ,Pref=64.			
Informational	System	18 Jul 2012 02:13:23.900 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet/IBM:ep11 interface is now active.			

The following illustration shows additional information that is displayed when you click the **more** link on the Event Log window.

Very System Status Very Service and Support Very Service and Service Service and Service Service And Service And Service Service Very Service and Service And Service And Service Service And Service And Service Service And Service Service And Service And Service Service And Service Service And Ser	IBM Integrated Management Module II	USERID Settings Log out
The page deploys the contents of the IMM event top, and alows you to sort and fifter the log. By default the log entries are displayed on reverse chronological order (most recent log entry fist). For each loc server's of the event is deployed on the tampstance, output a transation, going and taken transage. The IBM log has a linted capacity. When the log becomes ful, it wraps, causing the oldest entries to be deleted. The 'BeM', 'Source' and 'Date/Time' column handpos are clobable and can be used to sort the log entries in according or descending order of severity, source and the timestance, respectively. Cloking on these or handpos the difference of the other of the log entries in according or descending order of severity, source and timestance, respectively. Cloking on these or handpos the difference of toogling the sorting order. The 'Source' column is only available on scalable systems. The log entries can also be fittered using the log fitter controls. One or more items may be selected from the Severity. Source and Date categories to fitter the log entries. Notes: Output the fitters can be only one fields at a time (e., can't sort on Date/Time and severity at the same time). Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Source column is available only in scalable systems. Sorting and fitters can be only as calable systems. Source column is available only in scalable systems. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be commed. Sorting and fitters can be only available systems. Sorting and fitters can be commed. Sorting a	System Status Events - Service and Support - Server Management - IMM Management - Search	
The page deploys the contents of the IMM event too, and alows you to sort and first the log. By default the log entries are displayed on reverse chronological order (most recent log entry first). For each log servery of the event is deployed on the tamberating, out and a text message. The IBM log has a linted capacity. When the log becomes ful, it wraps, causing the oldest entries to be deleted. The 'BeN', 'Source' and 'Date/Time' column handpos are dicable and can be used to sort the log entries in according or descending order of sevenity, source and timestamp, respectively. Clicking on these of handpos the distribution of the log entries in according or descending order of sevenity, source and timestamp, respectively. Clicking on these of the gentries can also be fittered using the log fitter controls. One or more items may be selected from the Severity. Source and Date categories to fitter the log entries. Notes: Output the fitter on the log in the log inter on severity). Output the fitter on the log inter on the log inter on basel/Time and severity at the same time). Source column is available only in sclabile systems. Source column is available systems. Source column is available only in sclabile systems. Source column is available systems. Source c	Event Log	
The "Sev", "Source" and "Date/Time" column headings are clickable and can be used to sort the log entries in ascending or descending order of severity, source and timestamp, respectively. Clicking on these of headings multiple times has the effect of togging the sorting order. The "Source" column is only available on sciable systems. The log entries can also be fiftered using the log fifter controls. One or more items may be selected from the Severity, Source and Date categories to fifter the log entries. Notes: Usg entries can be fiftered on multiple fields (e.g., fifter on severity). Usg entries can be one fittered on only one field at a time (i.e., can't sort on Date/Time and severity at the same time). Sorting and fittering can be controled. Usg on the science of the sci	This page displays the contents of the IMM event log, and allows you to sort and filter the log. By default the log entries are displayed in revers	se chronological order (most recent log entry first). For each log
headnags multiple times has the effect of togging the sorting order. The "Source" column is only available on scalable systems. The log entries can also be fittered using the log fitter controls. One or more items may be selected from the Severity, Source and Date categories to fitter the log entries. Notes: • Log entries can be fittered on multiple fields (e.g. fitter on severity). • Log entries can be sorted on only one field at a time (i.e. can't sort on Date/Time and severity at the same time). • Sorting and fittering can be contended. • Source column is available only in scalable systems. Head • Delete Events • Fitter Events	The IMM log has a limited capacity. When the log becomes full, it wraps, causing the oldest entries to be deleted.	=
Notes: • Log entries can be fittered on multiple fields (e.g. fitter on severity). • Log entries can be storted on only one field at a time (e.e. can't sort on Date/Time and severity at the same time). • Sorture column is available only in scalable systems. Here: • Fitter Events • Fitter Events		severity, source and timestamp, respectively. Clicking on these $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$
Log entries can be fittered on multiple fields (e.g. fitter on severity): Log entries can be sorted on only one field at a time (i.e., can't sort on Date/Tme and severity at the same time). Sorting and fittering can be combined. Sorcer column is available only in sclabble systems. Log entries. Delete Events Fitter Events	The log entries can also be filtered using the log filter controls. One or more items may be selected from the Severity, Source and Date categoria	es to filter the log entries.
Log entries on he sorted on only one field at a time (Le. can't sort on Date/Time and severity at the same time). Sorting and filtering can be contended. Sorce column is available only in scilable systems. Beac. Delete Events Filter Events	Notes:	
Source column is available only in scalable systems. Iess Export Defete Events FRer Events	Log entries can be filtered on multiple fields (e.g. filter on severity).	
Source column is available only in scalable systems. Heats Detec Events Fifter Events		
less Export] Delete Events > Fitser Events		
Export) Delete Events > Filter Events		
	Fiter Events	

To sort and filter events in the event log, select the column heading as shown in the following illustration.

Severity	Source	Date	 Event ID 	Message
🚮 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:20:40.371 PM	0x4000002000000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Reset was caused by restoring default values.
Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:22:49.792 PM	0x800801282101fff	Device Low Security Jmp has been added.
🔣 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:25:24.943 PM	0x4000000100000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Network Initialization Complete.
🚺 Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:25:28:538 PM	0x4000001900000000	LAN: Ethernet(IBM:ep1) interface is now active.
Informational	System	23 Jul 2012 03:25:30 220 PM	0x4000003700000000	ENET[CIM:ep1] IPv6-LinkLocal:HstName=IMM2- e41113d90631_IP@=te80:e61113tted9:0631

You can save all or save selected events in the event log to a file using the Export option, as shown in the following illustration.



To save events to a file perform one of the following steps:

- To select specific events, choose an event on the Event Log window and simultaneously press the Ctrl key on your keyboard; then, left-click on your mouse or touchpad and click **Export**.
- To save all events to a file, click **Export**; then, click **OK**.

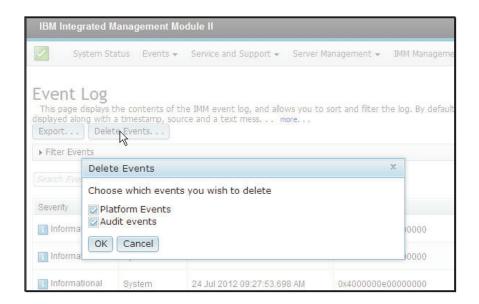
The next two illustrations show examples of the Export Events window, using the **Selected Events** and **All Events** buttons.

Export Events	х
Export events to a text file. Select which events to export. Use 'Ctrl'+Select for selection of mutiple events.	
 All Events Selected Events 	
OK Cancel	

Export Events	х
Export events to a text file. Select which events to export. Use 'Ctrl'+Select for selection of mutiple events.	
O All Events Selected Events	
OK Cancel	

To choose which type of events you want to delete, click **Delete Events**. You must select the category of events you wish to delete.

The following illustration shows the Delete Events window.



To select the type of event log entries you want to display, click Filter Events.

The following illustration shows the Filter Events pane.

IBM Integrated I	nanayement M	loudien		
System St	atus Events 🗸	Service and Support - Server	Management 👻 IMM Management 👻 🗌	Search
evenity of the even	the contents of t is displayed alor te Events	the IMM event log, and allows you to ng with a timestamp, source and a te	o sort and filter the log. By default the log xt mess more	g entries are displayed in reverse chronological order (most
 Filter Events 				
To filter the event	log entries, sele	ct one or more items from the Colun	nns, Severity, and Date categories below.	
Visible columns Service State Source Date Index Sequence # Vevent ID Message	G	Event types Error Events Warning Events Informational Events Audit Events	Date ranges to show All Dates Previous 2 hours Previous 24 hours Previous week Previous month Specific date	
Severity .	Source	Date	Event ID	Message
👔 Informational	System	19 Jul 2012 09:09:24.614 AM	0x4000002000000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Reset was caused by restoring default values.
🚹 Informational	System	19 Jul 2012 09:11:47.548 AM	0x800801282101ffff	Device Low Security Jmp has been added.
Informational	System	19. Jul 2012 09:14:19 714 AM	0x4000000100000000	Management Controller SN# 23D4895 Network

To search for specific types of events or keywords, type the information in the **Search Events** field and click **Go**.

The following illustration is an example of a search request.

System St	tatus Events	 Service and Support - Serve 	er Management 👻 IMM Management 👻	Search.
Event Log				
This page displays			to sort and filter the log. By default the	log entries are displa
	a timestamp, s te Events	ource and a text mess more		
Filter Events				
Princer Evento				
ENET		Go		
		2) Date	▼ Event ID	Messag
Severity	; Source			Messag
Severity	Source	23 Jul 2012 03:32:03.588 PM	0x400000160000000	ENET[Cl e41f13d
		23 Jul 2012 03:32:03.588 PM		ENET[C

Notification of system events

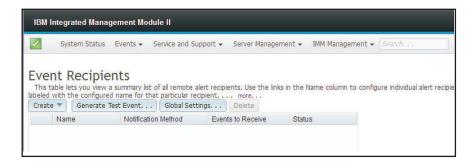
Select the **Event Recipients** option to add and modify email and syslog notifications.

The following illustration shows selection of the Event Recipients option.

IBM I	ntegrated Manaç	jement Mo	dule II	
	System Status	Events 👻	Service and Support 🗸 Server Management 👻 IMM Management 🗸	Sea
		Event Lo	g Full log history of all events	
1000	em x3750 stem Descriptive Nam	C V CIIIC INC	cipients Add and modify E-Mail and SysLog notifications	

The Event Recipients option enables you to manage who will be notified of system events. You can configure each recipient and manage settings that apply to all Event Recipients. You can also generate a test event to verify notification feature operation.

The following illustration shows the Event Recipients page.



The following illustration shows additional information that is displayed when you click the **more** link on the Event Recipients page.



Creating email and syslog notifications

Select the Create tab to create email and syslog notifications.

The following illustration shows the options available in the Create menu.

	System Status Eve	ents 👻 Service and S	upport 👻 Server Manage	ment 👻 IMM Managen	nent 🗸 Search
This ta labeled Create	with the configured nar Generate Test E	mary list of all remote ne for that particular re event Global Set	tings Delete		o configure individual alert re
	e E-mail Notification	tification Method	Events to Receive	Status	
Creat					
200	e SysLog Notification				

In the **Create E-mail Notification** option you can setup a target email address and choose the types of events for which you want to be notified. In addition you can click **Advanced Settings** to select the starting index number. To include the event log in the email, select the **Include the event log contents in the e-mail body** check box.

The following illustration shows the Create E-mail Notification screen.

Create E-Mail Notification		x
Descriptive name: E-Mail address:		
Events to receive:		
Enable Critical Critical Temperature Threshold Exceeded Critical Voltage Threshold Exceeded Critical Power Failure Hard Disk Drive Failure CPU Failure CPU Failure Memory Failure Memory Failure All other critical events	Enable Attention Power redundancy warning Warning Temperature Threshold Exceeded Warning Voltage Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded CPU in degraded state Memory Warning All other attention events	Enable System Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout All other informational/system events System Power Ort/Off Operating System Loader watchdog timeout Predicted failure (PFA) Event log 75% full Network change
Include the event log contents in the e-m	ail body	
Disable this notification		
Advanced Settings		
OK		

The following illustration shows the selections in the Advance Settings pane.

Descriptive n	ame:		
E-Mail addre:	ss:		
Events to rec	ceive:		
Enab Crit 1 Crit 2 Crit 3 Fan 4 CPU 5 Har 6 Pow All 7 8	rical riperature Threshold Exceeded tage Threshold Exceeded ver Failure Drive Failure e alure Incompatibility indancy failure thical events	Enable Attention Power redundancy warning Warning Temperature Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Non-critical Pan events CPU in degraded state CPU in degraded state All other attention events	Enable System Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout All other informational/system events System Power On/Off Operating System Loader watchdog timeou Predicted failure (PFA) Event log 75% full Network change
Incluc 9 10 Disab 11	event log contents in the e-m	ail body	
• Advai	ettings		

In the **Create Syslog Notification** option you can setup the host name and IP address of the syslog collector and choose the types of events for which you want to be notified. You can click **Advanced Settings** to select the starting index number. You can also specify the port you want to use for this type of notification.

The following illustration shows the Create Syslog Notification screen.

Create SysLog Notification		х
Descriptive name:		
Host name or IP address of the SysLog colle	ctor: Port:	
Events to receive:		
Enable Critical	Enable Attention	Enable System
Critical Temperature Threshold Exceeded Critical Voltage Threshold Exceeded Critical Power Failure Hard Disk Drive Failure CRU Failure CRU Failure Memory Failure Hardware Incompatibility Power redundancy failure All other critical events	Power redundancy warning Warning Temperature Threahold Exceeded Warning Voltage Threahold Exceeded Warning Power Threahold Exceeded Non-critical Fan events CCU in degraded state Memory Warning All other attention events	Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout All other informational/system events System Power On/Off Operating System boat failure Operating System Loader watchdog timeout Predicted failure (PFA) Event log 75% full Network change
Disable this notification Advanced Settings		
OK Cancel		

The following illustration shows the selections in the Advance Settings pane.

Create SysL	og Notification		
Descriptive n	ame:		
Host name o	r IP address of the SysLog colle	ctor: Port:	
Events t 1	/e:		
Enab Crit 3 Crit 4 Crit 4 Grit 5 Fan 6 CP4 6 Mer 7 Har 8 Pow All 9 10	cal persture Threshold Exceeded age Threshold Exceeded er Pailure rive Pailure lure compatibility idancy failure tical events	Enable Attention Power redundancy warning: Warning Temperature Threshold Exceeded Warning Voltoge Threshold Exceeded Warning Power Threshold Exceeded Non-critical Fan events CPU in degraded state Memory Warning All other attention events	Enable System Successful Remote Login Operating System Timeout All other informational/system events System Power On/Off Operating System boot failure Operating System Loader watchdog timeout Predicted failure (PFA) Event log 75% full Network change
Disab 11	notification		
+ Advai	attings		
Index: 1	2		

Generating test events

Use the **Generate Test Event...** tab to send a test email to a selected email target. After selection of the event notification, click **OK** to generate the test event. The test event is sent to the recipient with notification that this is a test.

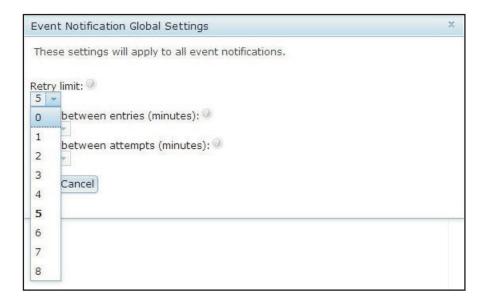
The following illustration shows the Generate Test Event window.

IBM Integrated M	Nanagement Module II			USERID Settings Log out
System St	atus Events 👻 Service and S	upport 👻 Server Manage	ment 👻 IMM Mar	agement 🗸 Search
eled with the con		cipient more	ks in the Name colu	m to configure individual alert recipients. You can define up to 12 unique recipients. Each link for an alert n
Name	Notification Method	Events to Receive	Status	
Target User	E-Mail	None	Enabled	
	Generate Test Event			×
	This will generate a	test event and will be	broadcast to th	e recipient 'Target User' indicating that it is just a test. Do you wish to proceed?

Setting limits to retry notifications

Use the **Global Settings...** tab to set a limit in which to retry the event notification, retry the delay between event notification entries (in minutes), and retry the delay between attempts (in minutes).

The following illustration shows the settings for the Retry limit option.



The following illustration shows the settings for the Delay between entries (minutes) option.

Event	Notification Global Settings	х
These	e settings will apply to all event notifications.	
Retry 5 👻	limit: 🧼	
	between entries (minutes): 🧼	
0	etween attempts (minutes): 🤍	
0.5 1 1.5	ancel	
2		
з		
3.5		
4		

The following illustration shows the settings for the Delay between attempts (minutes) option.

Event Notification Global Settings	х
These settings will apply to all event notifications.	
Retry limit: 🥯	
Delay between entries (minutes): 0.5	
Delay between attempts (minutes): 🧼	
0 ancel	
1	
1.5	
2.5	
3	
3.5	
4	

Deleting email or syslog notifications

Use the **Delete** tab to remove an email or syslog notification target.

The following illustration shows the Confirm Event Notification Deletion window.

		ement Module II	Support 👻 Server Manag	ement 👻 IMM Manad	ement 👻 Sea
This tab	that particular rec		te alert recipients. Use the lin	iks in the Name column	to configure ir
1	lame	Notification Method	Events to Receive	Status	
() E	mail Subject	E-Mail	None	Enabled	
0 E	mail2 Subject	E-Mail	None	Enabled	
	Confi	rm Event Notification	n Deletion	х	
		Do you want to del	ete the notification 'Ema	ail Subject' ?	
	OK	Cancel			

Collecting service and support information

Click the **Download Service Data** option under the Service and Support menu to collect information about the server that can be used by IBM Support to assist you with your problem.

The following illustration shows the Service and Support menu.



Click the **Download Now** button if you want to download the service and support data.

The following illustration shows the Download Service Data window.



The process of collecting the service and support data starts. This process takes a few minutes to generate the service data that you can save to a file.

The following illustration is displayed while the Service data is being generated.



When the process is complete, you will be prompted to enter the location in which to save the file. Refer to the following illustration for an example.

IBM Integrated I	Management Module II
System St	tatus Events • Service and Support • Server Management • IMM Management • Search
	Service Data ally obtain the service data for your system. Normally you would only do this at the request of IBM Support personnel.
	Opening 8722AC1_23D4895_imm2_120719-104929.tgz
	imit is a: tgr:Fie (442 K8) from: https://9.37.189.59
	What should Firefox do with this file? O gpen with Browse
	 ⊙ Save File □ Do this gutomatically for files like this from now on.
	OK Cancel

Capturing the latest OS failure screen data

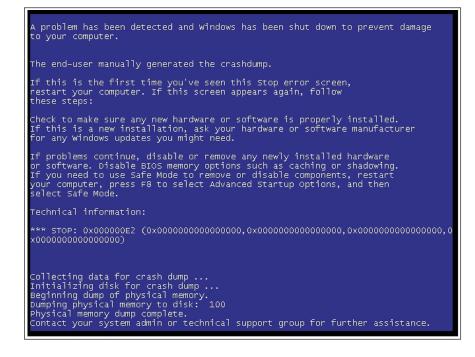
Use the Latest OS Failure Screen option to capture the operating system failure screen data and store the data. The IMM2 stores only the most recent error event information, overwriting earlier OS failure screen data when a new error event occurs. The OS Watchdog feature must be enabled to capture the OS failure screen. If an event occurs that causes the OS to stop running, the OS Watchdog feature is triggered The OS failure screen capture is available only with the IMM2 Advance Level functionality. See the documentation for your server for information about the level of IMM2 that is installed in your server.

To remotely display a OS Failure Screen image, select one of the following menu choices:

- · Latest OS Failure Screen from the Server Management tab
- Latest OS Failure Screen tab on the System Status page

Note: If an OS Failure Screen has not been captured, the Latest OS Failure Screen tab on the System Status page will be grayed out and cannot be selected.

The following illustration shows the OS Failure Screen.



Chapter 7. Features on Demand

IMM2 Features on Demand (FoD) allows you to install and manage optional server and systems management features.

There are multiple levels of IMM2 firmware functionality and features available for your server. The level of IMM2 firmware features installed on your server vary based on hardware type. For information about the type of IMM2 hardware and features in your server, see the documentation that came with the server.

You can upgrade IMM2 functionality by purchasing and installing an FoD activation key. For additional detailed information about FoD, see the *Features on Demand User's Guide* at http://www.ibm.com/systems/x/fod/.

Note: On servers with the IMM2 Basic level functionality, the IBM Integrated Management Module Standard Upgrade is required prior to installing the IBM Integrated Management Module Advanced Upgrade functionality.

To order an FoD activation key, contact your IBM representative or business partner or go to http://www.ibm.com/systems/x/fod/.

Use the IMM2 web interface or the IMM2 CLI to manually install an FoD activation key that lets you use an optional feature you have purchased. Before activating a key:

- The FoD activation key must be on the system that you are using to login to the IMM2.
- You must have ordered the FoD option and received its authorization code via mail or email.

See "Installing an activation key" or "Removing an activation key" on page 127 for information about managing an FoD activation key using the IMM2 web interface. See "keycfg command" on page 154 for information about managing an FoD activation key using the IMM2 CLI.

Installing an activation key

Install a FoD activation key to add an optional feature to your server.

To install a FoD activation key, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2. For more information, see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8.
- 2. From the IMM2 web interface, click on the **IMM Management** tab; then, click **Activation Key Management**.

Server Management 👻	IMM Management + Search	h
	IMM Properties	Various properties and settings related to the IMM
	Users	Create and modify user accounts that will have access to the IMM console
Valid	Network	Network settings such as SNMP and LDAP used by the IMM
	Security	Configure security protocols such as SSL and SSH
	IMM Configuration	View a summary of the current configuration settings.
	Restart IMM	Restart the IMM. Typically only needed when experiencing problems with the IMM
	Reset IMM to factory defaults	Sets all current configuration settings back to default values
	Activation Key Management	Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality

3. From the Activation Key Management page, click Add....



Activation Key Management

Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality.



4. In the Add Activation Key window, click **Select File...**; then, select the activation key file to add in the File Upload window and click **Open** to add the file or click **Cancel** to stop the installation. To finish adding the key, click **OK**, in the Add Activation Key window, or click **Cancel** to stop the installation.

Add Activation Key	х
Select the file that contains your activation key information	
Select File.	
OK Cancel	

The Success window indicates that the activation key is installed.

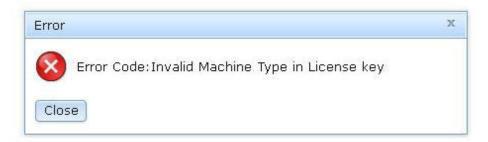


Note:

• If the activation key is not valid, you will see the following error window.



• If you are attempting to install the activation key on a machine type that does not support the FoD feature, you will see the following error window.



5. Click OK to close the Success window.

The selected activation key is added to the server and appears in the Activation Key Management page.

Activation Key Management Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality. Add Delete							
	Descriptor Type 🔺	Feature Description	Valid Through	Uses Remaining	Status		
٢	32781	LSI CCoH Enablement	No Constraints	No Constraints	Activation key is valid		

Removing an activation key

Remove a FoD activation key to delete an optional feature from your server.

To remove a FoD activation key, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to the IMM2. For more information, see "Logging in to the IMM2" on page 8.
- 2. From the IMM2 web interface, click on the **IMM Management** tab; then, click on **Activation Key Management**.

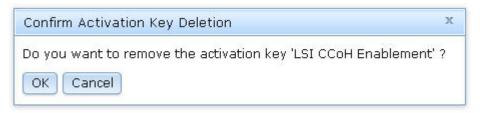
Server Management 👻	IMM Management + Search	te e e
	IMM Properties	Various properties and settings related to the IMM
	Users	Create and modify user accounts that will have access to the IMM console
Valio	Network	Network settings such as SNMP and LDAP used by the IMM
	Security	Configure security protocols such as SSL and SSH
	IMM Configuration	View a summary of the current configuration settings.
	Restart IMM	Restart the IMM. Typically only needed when experiencing problems with the IMM
	Reset IMM to factory defaults	Sets all current configuration settings back to default values
	Activation Key Management (h)	Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality

3. From the Activation Key Management page, select the activation key to remove; then, click Delete.

Activation Key Management Add and remove activation keys for additional functionality.

Add.	Delete		
	Descriptor Type 🔺	Feature Description	Valid Thro
0	32781	LSI CCoH Enablement	No Constra

4. In the Confirm Activation Key Deletion window, click OK to confirm activation key deletion or click Cancel to keep the key file.



The selected activation key is removed from the server and no longer appears in the Activation Key Management page.

Activation Key Management dd and remove activation keys for additional functionality. Add Delete							
	Des	criptor Typ	e 🔺	Feature Description	Valid Through	Uses Remaining	Status

Chapter 8. Command-line interface

Use the IMM2 command-line interface (CLI) to access the IMM2 without having to use the web interface. It provides a subset of the management functions that are provided by the web interface.

You can access the CLI through a Telnet or SSH session. You must be authenticated by the IMM2 before you can issue any CLI commands.

Managing the IMM2 with IPMI

The IMM2 comes with User ID 1 set initially to a user name of USERID and password of PASSW0RD (with a zero, not the letter O). This user has Supervisor access.

Important: Change this user name and password during your initial configuration for enhanced security.

The IMM2 also provides the following IPMI remote server management capabilities:

Command-line interfaces

The CLI provides direct access to server-management functions through the IPMI 2.0 protocol. You can use the IPMItool to issue commands to control server power, view server information, and identify the server. For more information about IPMItool, see "Using IPMItool."

Serial over LAN

To manage servers from a remote location, use the IPMItool to establish a Serial over LAN (SOL) connection. For more information about IPMItool, see "Using IPMItool."

Using IPMItool

IPMItool provides various tools that you can use to manage and configure an IPMI system. You can use IPMItool in-band or out-of-band to manage and configure the IMM2.

For more information about IPMItool, or to download IPMItool, go to http://sourceforge.net/.

Accessing the command-line interface

To access the CLI, start a Telnet or SSH session to the IMM2 IP address (see "Configuring serial-to-Telnet or SSH redirection" on page 130 for more information).

Logging in to the command-line session

To log in to the command line, complete the following steps:

- 1. Establish a connection with the IMM2.
- 2. At the user name prompt, type the user ID.

3. At the password prompt, type the password that you use to log in to the IMM2.

You are logged in to the command line. The command-line prompt is system>. The command-line session continues until you type exit at the command line. You are logged off and the session is ended.

Configuring serial-to-Telnet or SSH redirection

Serial-to-Telnet or SSH redirection enables a system administrator to use the IMM2 as a serial terminal server. A server serial port can be accessed from a Telnet or SSH connection when serial redirection is enabled.

Notes:

- 1. The IMM2 allows a maximum of two open Telnet sessions. The Telnet sessions can access the serial ports independently so that multiple users can have a concurrent view of a redirected serial port.
- 2. The CLI **console 1** command is used to start a serial redirection session with the COM port.

Example session

```
telnet 192.168.70.125 (Press Enter.)
Connecting to 192.168.70.125...
username: USERID (Press Enter.)
password: ******** (Press Enter.)
system> console 1 (Press Enter.)
```

All traffic from COM2 is now routed to the Telnet session. All traffic from the Telnet or SSH session is routed to COM2.

ESC (

Type the exit key sequence to return to the CLI. In this example, press Esc and then type a left parenthesis. The CLI prompt displays to indicate return to the IMM2 CLI.

system>

Command syntax

Read the following guidelines before you use the commands:

- Each command has the following format: command [arguments] [-options]
- The command syntax is case sensitive.
- The command name is all lowercase.
- All arguments must immediately follow the command. The options immediately follow the arguments.
- Each option is always preceded by a hyphen (-). An option can be a short option (single letter) or a long option (multiple letters).
- If an option has an argument, the argument is mandatory, for example:

ifconfig eth0 -i 192.168.70.34 -g 192.168.70.29 -s 255.255.255.0

where **ifconfig** is the command, eth0 is an argument, and -i, -g, and -s are options. In this example, all three options have arguments.

• Brackets indicate that an argument or option is optional. Brackets are not part of the command that you type.

Features and limitations

The CLI has the following features and limitations:

• Multiple concurrent CLI sessions are allowed with different access methods (Telnet or SSH). At most, two Telnet command-line sessions can be active at any time.

Note: The number of Telnet sessions is configurable; valid values are 0, 1, and 2. The value 0 means that the Telnet interface is disabled.

- One command is allowed per line (160-character limit, including spaces).
- There is no continuation character for long commands. The only editing function is the Backspace key to erase the character that you just typed.
- The Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys can be used to browse through the last eight commands. The **history** command displays a list of the last eight commands, which you can then use as a shortcut to execute a command, as in the following example:

```
system > history
0 ifconfig eth0
 1 readlog
 2 readlog
 3 readlog
4 history
system > !0
-state enabled
-c dthens
-i 192.168.70.125
-q 0.0.0.0
-s 255.255.255.0
-n IMM2A00096B9E003A
-r auto
-d auto
-m 1500
-b 00:09:6B:9E:00:3A
-1 00:00:00:00:00:00
system >
```

- In the CLI, the output buffer limit is 2 KB. There is no buffering. The output of an individual command cannot exceed 2048 characters. This limit does not apply in serial redirect mode (the data is buffered during serial redirect).
- The output of a command is displayed on the screen after the command has completed execution. This makes it impossible for commands to report real-time execution status. For example, in the verbose mode of the **flashing** command, the flashing progress is not shown in real time. It is shown after the command completes execution.
- Simple text messages are used to denote command execution status, as in the following example:

```
system> power on
ok
system> power state
Power: On
State: System power off/State unknown
system>
```

- The command syntax is case sensitive.
- There must be at least one space between an option and its argument. For example, ifconfig eth0 -i192.168.70.133 is incorrect syntax. The correct syntax is ifconfig eth0 -i 192.168.70.133.
- All commands have the -h, -help, and ? options, which give syntax help. All of the following examples will give the same result:

```
system> power -h
system> power -help
system> power ?
```

• Some of the commands that are described in the following sections might not be available for your system configuration. To see a list of the commands that are supported by your configuration, use the help or ? option, as shown in the following examples:

```
system> help
system> ?
```

Alphabetical command listing

The complete list of all IMM2 CLI commands, in alphabetical order, is as follows:

- "accseccfg command" on page 142
- "alertcfg command" on page 143
- "alertentries command" on page 177
- "asu command" on page 144
- "backup command" on page 148
- "batch command" on page 179
- "clearcfg command" on page 180
- "clearlog command" on page 134
- "clock command" on page 180
- "console command" on page 141
- "dhcpinfo command" on page 148
- "dns command" on page 149
- "ethtousb command" on page 151
- "exit command" on page 133
- "fans command" on page 134
- "ffdc command" on page 134
- "help command" on page 133
- "history command" on page 133
- "identify command" on page 181
- "ifconfig command" on page 152
- "info command" on page 181
- "keycfg command" on page 154
- "ldap command" on page 155
- "led command" on page 135
- "ntp command" on page 157
- "passwordcfg command" on page 157
- "ports command" on page 158
- "portcfg command" on page 159
- "power command" on page 140
- "pxeboot command" on page 140
- "readlog command" on page 137
- "reset command" on page 141
- "resetsp command" on page 182
- "restore command" on page 160

- "restoredefaults command" on page 160
- "set command" on page 161
- "show command" on page 138
- "smtp command" on page 161
- "snmp command" on page 162
- "snmpalerts command" on page 164
- "srcfg command" on page 166
- "sshcfg command" on page 166
- "ssl command" on page 167
- "sslcfg command" on page 168
- "syshealth command" on page 138
- "telnetcfg command" on page 171
- "temps command" on page 139
- "thermal command" on page 171
- "timeouts command" on page 172
- "usbeth command" on page 172
- "users command" on page 173
- "volts command" on page 139
- "vpd command" on page 140

Utility commands

The utility commands are as follows:

- "exit command"
- "help command"
- "history command"

exit command

Use the exit command to log off and end the CLI session.

help command

Use the **help** command to display a list of all commands with a short description for each. You can also type ? at the command prompt.

history command

Use the **history** command to display an indexed history list of the last eight commands that were issued. The indexes can then be used as shortcuts (preceded by !) to reissue commands from this history list.

Example:

system> history 0 ifconfig eth0 1 readlog 2 readlog 3 readlog 4 history system> ifconfig eth0 -state enabled -c dthens -i 192.168.70.125 -g 0.0.0

```
-s 255.255.255.0
-n IMM2A00096B9E003A
-r auto
-d auto
-m 1500
-b 00:09:6B:9E:00:3A
-l 00:00:00:00:00:00
system>
```

Monitor commands

The monitor commands are as follows:

- "clearlog command"
- "fans command"
- "ffdc command"
- "led command" on page 135
- "readlog command" on page 137
- "show command" on page 138
- "syshealth command" on page 138
- "temps command" on page 139
- "volts command" on page 139
- "vpd command" on page 140

clearlog command

Use the **clearlog** command to clear the event log of the IMM2. You must have the authority to clear event logs to use this command.

fans command

Use the fans command to display the speed for each of the server fans.

Example:

system> **fans** fan1 75% fan2 80% fan3 90% system>

ffdc command

Use the **ffdc** (first failure data capture) command to generate and transfer service data to IBM Support.

The following list consist of commands to be used with the ffdc command:

- generate, create a new service data file
- status, check status of service data file
- copy, copy existing service data
- delete, delete existing service data

The following table shows the arguments for the **ffdc** command.

[Option	Description	Values		
	-t	Type number	1 (processor dump) and 4 (service data). The default value is 1.		

Option	Description	Values	
-f ¹	Remote filename or sftp target directory.	For sftp, use full path or trailing / on directory name (~/ or /tmp/). The default value is the system generated name.	
ip 1	Address of the tftp/sftp server		
-pn 1	Port number of the tftp/sftp server	The default value is 69/22.	
-u ¹	Username for the sftp server		
-pw ¹	Password for the sftp server		
1. Additional argurment for generate and copy commands			

Syntax:

```
ffdc [options]
option:
    -t 1 or 4
    -f
    -ip ip_address
    -pn port_number
    -u username
    -pw password
```

Example:

```
system> ffdc generate
Generating ffdc...
system> ffdc status
Type 1 ffdc: in progress
system> ffdc copy -t 1 -ip 192.168.70.230 -u User2 -pw Passw0rd -f /tmp/
Waiting for ffdc....
Copying ffdc...
ok
system> ffdc status
Type 1 ffdc: completed
8737AC1_DSY0123_imm2_120317-153327.tgz
```

system> ffdc generate Generating ffdc... system> ffdc status Type 1 ffdc: in progress system> ffdc status Type 1 ffdc: in progress system> ffdc copy -ip 192.168.70.230 Copying ffdc... ok system> ffdc status Type 1 ffdc: completed 8737AC1_DSY0123_imm2_120926-105320.tgz system>

led command

Use the led command to display and set LED states.

• Running the **led** command with no options displays the status of front panel LEDs.

• The **led** -**d** command option must be used with **led** -**identify** on command option.

Option	Description	Values
-1	Get status of all LEDs on system and its subcomponents	
-chklog	Turn off check log LED	off
-identify	Change state of enclosure identify LED	off, on, blink
-d	Turn on identification LED for specified time period	Time period (seconds)

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Syntax:

led [options]
option:
 -l
 -chklog off
 -identify state
 -d time

Example:

system> led Fault Identify Chklog Power	Off On Blue Off Off		
system> led -l			0.1
Label Battery	Location Planar	State Off	Color
BMC Heartbeat BRD Channel A Channel B Channel C Channel D Channel E Chklog CNFG CPU CPU 1 CPU 2 DASD DIMM DIMM 1 DIMM 10 DIMM 11 DIMM 12 DIMM 13 DIMM 14 DIMM 15 DIMM 16	Planar Lightpath Card Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Front Panel Lightpath Card Lightpath Card Planar Planar Lightpath Card Lightpath Card Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar Planar	Blink Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Of	Green
DIMM 2 DIMM 3	Planar Planar	Off Off	
DIMM 4 DIMM 5	Planar Planar	Off Off	

DIMM 6 DIMM 7 DIMM 8 DIMM 9 FAN FAN 1 FAN 2 FAN 3 Fault Identify LINK LOG NMI OVER SPEC PCI 1 PCI 2 PCI 3 PCI 4 Planar Power PS RAID Riser 1 Riser 2 SAS ERR	Planar Planar Planar Planar Lightpath Card Planar Planar Planar Front Panel (+) Front Panel (+) Lightpath Card Lightpath Card Lightpath Card Lightpath Card FRU FRU FRU FRU FRU Planar Front Panel (+) Lightpath Card Lightpath Card Planar Planar Planar FRU	0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff 0ff
SAS MISSING	Planar	Off
SP	Lightpath Card	Off
TEMP	Lightpath Card	Off
VRM	Lightpath Card	Off
system>		

readlog command

Use the **readlog** command to display the IMM2 event log entries, five at a time. The entries are displayed from the most recent to the oldest.

readlog displays the first five entries in the event log, starting with the most recent, on its first execution, and then the next five for each subsequent call.

readlog -a displays all entries in the event log, starting with the most recent.

readlog -**f** resets the counter and displays the first 5 entries in the event log, starting with the most recent.

readlog -date *date* displays event log entries for the specified date, specified in mm/dd/yy format. It can be a pipe (|) separated list of dates.

readlog -sev *severity* displays event log entries for the specified severity level (E, W, I). It can be a pipe (|) separated list of severity levels.

readlog -i *ip_address* sets the IPv4 or IPv6 IP address of the TFTP or SFTP server where the event log is saved. The -i and -l command options are used together to specify the location.

readlog -1 *filename* sets the file name of the event log file. The -i and -1 command options are used together to specify the location.

readlog -pn *port_number* displays or sets the port number of the TFTP or SFTP server (default 69/22).

readlog -u username specifies the user name for the SFTP server.

readlog -pw password specifies the password for the SFTP server.

Syntax: readlog [options] option: -a

```
- f
```

Blue

```
-date date
-sev severity
-i ip_address
-l filename
-pn port_number
-u username
-pw password
```

Example:

```
system> readlog -f
1 I SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:18:58 Remote Login Successful.
Login ID: ''USERID' CLI authenticated from 192.168.70.231 (Telnet).'
2 I SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:12:22 Remote Login successful.
Login ID: ''USERID' from web browser at IP@=192.168.70.231'
3 E SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:10:37 Failure reading I2C device.
4 E SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:10:37 Environmental monitor not responding.
5 E SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:10:37 Failure reading I2C device.
system> readlog
6 E SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:09:31 Fan 2 Fault. Multiple fan failures
7 E SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:09:31 Fan 1 Fault. Single fan failure
8 I SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:09:25 Ethernet[0] Link Established at 100Mb, Full Duplex.
9 I SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:09:24 Ethernet[0] configured to do Auto Speed/Auto Duplex.
10 I SERVPROC 12/18/03 10:09:24 Ethernet[0] MAC Address currently
being used: 0x00-09-6B-CA-0C-80
system>
```

show command

Use the show command to display simple IMM2 settings.

- The **show** command displays values set using the **set** command.
- Settings are organized like a directory tree. Display the full tree using the **show** -**r** command option.
- Some of these settings, such as environment variables, are used by the CLI.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
value	Path or setting value to display	
-r	Recursively display settings	

Syntax:

show [options] option: value -r

syshealth command

Use the **syshealth** command to display a summary of the health of the server. The power state, system state, restart count, and IMM2 software status are displayed.

Example:

system> syshealth
Power On
State System on/starting UEFI
Restarts 71
system>

temps command

Use the **temps** command to display all the temperatures and temperature thresholds. The same set of temperatures are displayed as in the web interface.

Example:

system> temps
Temperatures are displayed in degrees Fahrenheit/Celsius

	WR	W	Т	SS	HS	
CPU1				85/29		
CPU2				85/29		
DASD1				88/31		
Amb	59/15	70/21	83/28	90/32	95/35	
system	>					

Notes:

1. The output has the following column headings:

WR: warning reset

W: warning

T: temperature (current value)

SS: soft shutdown

HS: hard shutdown

2. All temperature values are in degrees Fahrenheit/Celsius.

volts command

Use the **volts** command to display all the voltages and voltage thresholds. The same set of voltages are displayed as in the web interface.

Example:

syster	system> volts								
	HSL	SSL	WL	WRL	V	WRH	WH	SSH	HSH
÷ ·	3.35 12.25 -5.10	2.80 11.10 -5.85	2.95 11.30 -5.65	3.05 11.50 -5.40	3.10 11.85 -5.20	3.50 12.15 -4.85	3.65 12.25 -4.65	5.75 3.70 12.40 -4.40 -2.80	3.85 12.65 -4.20
syster	n>								

Note: The output has the following column headings:

HSL: hard shutdown low

SSL: soft shutdown low

WL: warning low

WRL: warning reset low

V: voltage (current value)

WRH: warning reset high

WH: warning high

SSH: soft shutdown high

HSH: hard shutdown high

vpd command

Use the **vpd** command to display vital product data for the system (sys), IMM2 (imm), server BIOS (uefi), server Dynamic System Analysis Preboot (dsa), server firmware (fw), and server components (comp). The same information is displayed as in the web interface.

```
Syntax:
vpd [options]
option:
 -sys
 -imm
 -uefi
 -dsa
 -fw
 -comp
Example:
system> vpd -dsa
        Version
                    ReleaseDate
Туре
----
        -----
                    -----
        D6YT19AUS
                    02/27/2009
dsa
system>
```

Server power and restart control commands

The server power and restart commands are as follows:

- "power command"
- "pxeboot command"
- "reset command" on page 141

power command

Use the **power** command to control the server power. To issue the **power** commands, you must have power and restart access authority.

power on turns on the server power.

power off turns off the server power. The **-s** option shuts down the operating system before the server is turned off.

power state displays the server power state (on or off) and the current state of the server.

power cycle turns off the server power and then turns on the power. The **-s** option shuts down the operating system before the server is turned off.

Syntax:

```
power on
power off [-s]
power state
power cycle [-s]
```

pxeboot command

Use the **pxeboot** command to display and set the condition of the Preboot eXecution Environment.

Running **pxeboot** with no options, returns the current Preboot eXecution Environment setting. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-en	Sets the Preboot eXecution Environment condition for the next system restart	enabled, disabled

Syntax: pxeboot [options] option: -en state

Example:

system> pxeboot
-en disabled
system>

reset command

Use the **reset** command to restart the server. To use this command, you must have power and restart access authority. The **-s** option shuts down the operating system before the server is restarted.

```
Syntax:
reset [option]
option:
-s
```

Serial redirect command

There is one serial redirect command: the "console command."

console command

Use the **console** command to start a serial redirect console session to the designated serial port of the IMM2.

Syntax:

console 1

Configuration commands

The configuration commands are as follows:

- "accseccfg command" on page 142
- "alertcfg command" on page 143
- "asu command" on page 144
- "backup command" on page 148
- "dhcpinfo command" on page 148
- "dns command" on page 149
- "ethtousb command" on page 151
- "ifconfig command" on page 152
- "keycfg command" on page 154
- "ldap command" on page 155

- "ntp command" on page 157
- "passwordcfg command" on page 157
- "ports command" on page 158
- "portcfg command" on page 159
- "restore command" on page 160
- "restoredefaults command" on page 160
- "set command" on page 161
- "smtp command" on page 161
- "snmp command" on page 162
- "snmpalerts command" on page 164
- "srcfg command" on page 166
- "sshcfg command" on page 166
- "ssl command" on page 167
- "sslcfg command" on page 168
- "telnetcfg command" on page 171
- "thermal command" on page 171
- "timeouts command" on page 172
- "usbeth command" on page 172
- "users command" on page 173

accseccfg command

Use the **accseccfg** command to display and configure account security settings.

Running the **accseccfg** command with no options displays all account security information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-legacy	Sets account security to a predefined legacy set of defaults	
-high	Sets account security to a predefined high set of defaults	
-custom	Sets account security to user defined values	
-am	Sets user authentication method	local, ldap, localldap, ldaplocal
-lp	Lockout period after maximum login failures (minutes)	0, 1, 2, 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120, 180, or 240 minutes. The default value is 60 if "High Security" is enabled and 2 if "Legacy Security" is enabled. A value of zero disables this function.
-pe	Password expiration time period (days)	0 to 365 days
-pr	Password required	on, off
-pc	Password complexity rules	on, off
-pd	Password minimum number of different characters	0 to 19 characters

Option	Description	Values
-pl	Password length	1 to 20 characters
-ci	Minimum password change interval (hours)	0 to 240 hours
-lf	Maximum number of login failures	0 to 10
-chgdft	Change default password after first login	on, off
-chgnew	Change new user password after first login	on, off
-rc	Password reuse cycle	0 to 5
-wt	Web inactivity session timeout (minutes)	1, 5, 10, 15, 20, none, or user

accseccfg [options] option: -legacy -high -custom -am *authentication method* -lp lockout_period -pe time_period -pr state -pc state -pd number_characters -pl number_characters -ci minimum interval -lf number_failures -chgdft state -chgnew state -rc reuse cycle -wt timeout Example:

system> accseccfg -legacy -am local -lp 2 -pe 0 -pr off -pd 1 -pl 4 -ci 0 -lf 0 -chgdft off -chgnew off -rc 0 -wt user system>

alertcfg command

Use the **alertcfg** command to display and configure the IMM2 global remote alert parameters.

Option	Description	Values
-dr	Sets wait time between retries before the IMM2 resends an alert	0 to 4.0 minutes, in 0.5 minute increments
da	Sets wait time before the IMM2 sends an alert to the next recipient in the list	0 to 4.0 minutes, in 0.5 minute increments
rl	Sets the number of additional times that the IMM2 attempts to send an alert, if previous attempts were unsuccessful	0 to 8

Running the **alertcfg** command with no options displays all global remote alert parameters. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Syntax:

```
alertcfg [options]
options:
-rl retry_limit
-dr retry_delay
-da agent_delay
```

Example:

```
system>alertcfg
-dr 1.0
-da 2.5
-rl 5
system>
```

asu command

Advanced Settings Utility commands are used to set UEFI settings. The host system must be rebooted for any UEFI setting changes to take effect.

The following table contains a subset of commands that can be used with the **asu** command.

Command	Description	Value
delete	Use this command to delete an instance or record of a setting. The setting must be an instance that allows deletion, for example, iSCSI.AttemptName.1.	setting_instance
help	Use this command to display help information for one or more settings.	setting

Table 7. ASU commands

Table 7. ASU commands (continued)

Command	Description	Value
set	Use this command to change the value of a setting. Set the UEFI setting to the input value. Notes:	setting value
	Set one or more setting/value pairs.The setting can contain	
	wildcards if it expands to a single setting.	
	• The value must be enclosed in quotes if it contains spaces.	
	 Ordered list values are separated by the equal symbol (=). For example, set B*.Bootorder "CD/DVD Rom=Hard Disk 0=PXE Network." 	
showgroups	Use this command to display the available setting groups. This command displays the names of known groups. Group names may vary depending on the installed devices.	setting
show	Use this command to display the current value of one or more settings.	setting
showvalues	Use this command to display all possible values for one or more settings. Notes:	setting
	• This command will display information about the allowable values for the setting.	
	• The minimum and maximum number of instances allowed for the setting is displayed.	
	• The default value will be displayed if available.	
	• The default value is enclosed with opening and closing angle brackets (< and >).	
	• Text values show the minimum and maximum length and regular expression.	

Table 7. ASU commands (continued)

Command Description Value						
N	Notes:					
•	In the command syntax, <i>setting</i> is the name of a setting that you want to view or change, and <i>value</i> is the value that you are placing on the setting.					
•	Setting can be more than one name, except when using the set command.					
•	Setting can contain wildcards, for example an asterisk (*) or a question mark (?).					
•	Setting can be a group, a set	ting name, or all .				

Some examples of the asu command syntax are presented in the following list:

- To display all of the asu command options enter asu --help.
- To display verbose help for all commands enter asu -v --help.
- To display verbose help for one command enter asu -v set --help.
- To change a value enter asu set setting value.
- To display the current value enter asu show setting.
- To display settings in long batch format enter asu show -1 -b all
- To display all possible values for a setting enter asu showvalues *setting*. Example **show values** command:

```
system> asu showvalues S*.POST*
```

```
SystemRecovery.POSTWatchdogTimer==<Disable>=Enable
SystemRecovery.POSTWatchdogTimerValue=numeric min=5 max=20 step=1 default=5
```

```
system>
```

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values	
-b ¹	Display in batch format.		
help ³ Display command usage and options. Thehelp option is placed before the command, for example asu help show.			
help ³	Display help for the command. Thehelp option is placed after the command, for example, asu showhelp .		
-l ¹ Long format setting name (include the configuration set).			
-m ¹ Mixed format setting name (use the configuration id).			
-v ² Verbose output.			
 The -b, -l, and -m options are only used with the show command. The -v option is used only between asu and the command. 			

3. The --help option can be used with any command.

Syntax:

```
asu [options] command [cmdopts]
options:
    -v verbose output
    --help display main help
cmdopts:
    --help help for the command
```

Note: See individual commands for more command options.

Use the asu transaction commands to set multiple UEFI settings and create and execute batch mode commands. Use the **tropen** and **trset** commands to create a transaction file containing multiple settings to be applied. A transaction with a given id is opened using the **tropen** command. Settings are added to the set using the **trset** command. The completed transaction is committed using the **trcommit** command. When you are finished with the transaction, it can be deleted with the **trrm** command.

Note: The UEFI settings restore operation will create a transaction with an id using a random three digit number.

The following table contains transaction commands that can be used with the **asu** command.

Command	Description	Value
tropen <i>id</i>	This command creates a new transaction file containing several settings to be set.	<i>Id</i> is the identifying string, 1 - 3 alphanumeric characters.
trset <i>id</i>	This command adds one or more settings or value pairs to a transaction.	<i>Id</i> is the identifying string, 1 - 3 alphanumeric characters.
trlist <i>id</i>	This command displays the contents of the transaction file first. This can be useful when the transaction file is created in the CLI shell.	<i>Id</i> is the identifying string, 1 - 3 alphanumeric characters.
trcommit <i>id</i>	This command commits and executes the contents of the transaction file. The results of the execution and any errors will be displayed.	<i>Id</i> is the identifying string, 1 - 3 alphanumeric characters.
trrm <i>id</i>	This command removes the transaction file after it has been committed.	<i>Id</i> is the identifying string, 1 - 3 alphanumeric characters.

Table 8. Transaction commands

Example of establishing multiple UEFI settings:

asu tropen TR1 asu trset TR1 UEFI.BootModes.SystemBootMode "UEFI and Legacy" asu trset TR1 BootOrder.BootOrder "CD/DVD Rom=Hard Disk 0=PXE Network" asu trset TR1 BootOrder.WolBootOrder "CD/DVD Rom=Hard Disk 0=PXE Network" asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.ComlBaudRate 115200 asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.ComlDataBits 8 asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.ComlFlowControl Disable asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.ComlParity None asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.ComlStopBits 1 asu trset TR1 UEFI.DevicesandIOPorts.COMPort1 Enable asu trcommit TR1

backup command

Use the **backup** command to create a backup file containing the current system security settings.

Option	Description	Values
-f	Backup file name	Valid file name
-pp	Password or pass-phrase used to encrypt passwords inside the backup file	Valid password or quote delimited pass-phrase
-ip	IP address of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid IP address
-pn	Port number of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid port number (default 69/22)
-u	Username for SFTP server	Valid user name
-pw	Password for SFTP server	Valid password
-fd	Filename for XML description of backup CLI commands	Valid filename

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Syntax:

```
backup [options]
option:
    -f filename
    -pp password
    -ip ip_address
    -pn port_number
    -u username
    -pw password
    -fd filename
```

Example:

system> backup -f imm-back.cli -pp xxxxxx -ip 192.168.70.200
ok
system>

dhcpinfo command

Use the **dhcpinfo** command to view the DHCP server-assigned IP configuration for eth0, if the interface is configured automatically by a DHCP server. You can use the **ifconfig** command to enable or disable DHCP.

Syntax: dhcpinfo eth0

Example: system> dhcpinfo eth0

-server : 192.168.70.29 -n : IMM2A-00096B9E003A -i : 192.168.70.202 -g : 192.168.70.29

- S	: 255.255.255.0
-d	: linux-sp.raleigh.ibm.com
-dns1	: 192.168.70.29
-dns2	: 0.0.0.0
-dns3	: 0.0.0.0
-i6	: 0::0
-d6	: *
-dns61	: 0::0
-dns62	: 0::0
-dns63	: 0::0
svstem>	>

The following table describes the output from the example.

Option	Description	
-server	DHCP server that assigned the configuration	
-n	Assigned host name	
-i	Assigned IPv4 address	
-g	Assigned gateway address	
-s	Assigned subnet mask	
-d	Assigned domain name	
-dns1	Primary IPv4 DNS server IP address	
-dns2	Secondary IPv4 DNS IP address	
-dns3	Tertiary IPv4 DNS server IP address	
-i6	IPv6 address	
-d6	IPv6 domain name	
-dns61	Primary IPv6 DNS server IP address	
-dns62	Secondary IPv6 DNS IP address	
-dns63	Tertiary IPv6 DNS server IP address	

dns command

Use the **dns** command to view and set the DNS configuration of the IMM2.

Running the **dns** command with no options displays all DNS configuration information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-state	DNS state	on, off
-ddns	DDNS state	enabled, disabled
-i1	Primary IPv4 DNS server IP address	IP address in dotted decimal IP address format.
-i2	Secondary IPv4 DNS IP address	IP address in dotted decimal IP address format.
-i3	Tertiary IPv4 DNS server IP address	IP address in dotted decimal IP address format.
-i61	Primary IPv6 DNS server IP address	IP address in IPv6 format.
-i62	Secondary IPv6 DNS IP address	IP address in IPv6 format.

Option	Description	Values
-i63	Tertiary IPv6 DNS server IP address	IP address in IPv6 format.
-p	IPv4/IPv6 priority	ipv4, ipv6

dns [options]
option:
 -state state
 -ddns state
 -i1 first_ipv4_ip_address
 -i2 second_ipv4_ip_address
 -i3 third_ipv4_ip_address
 -i61 first_ipv6_ip_address
 -i62 second_ipv6_ip_address
 -i63 third_ipv6_ip_address
 -p priority

Note: The following example shows an IMM2 configuration where DNS is enabled.

```
Example:
```

```
system> dns
-state : enabled
-i1
       : 192.168.70.202
       : 192.168.70.208
-i2
-i3
      : 192.168.70.212
-i61
     : fe80::21a:64ff:fee6:4d5
-i62 : fe80::21a:64ff:fee6:4d6
-i63
     : fe80::21a:64ff:fee6:4d7
-ddns : enabled
-ddn
      : ibm.com
-ddncur : ibm.com
-dnsrc : dhcp
-p : ipv6
```

system>

The following table describes the output from the example.

Option	Description
-state	State of DNS (on or off)
-i1	Primary IPv4 DNS server IP address
-i2	Secondary IPv4 DNS IP address
-i3	Tertiary IPv4 DNS server IP address
-i61	Primary IPv6 DNS server IP address
-i62	Secondary IPv6 DNS IP address
-i63	Tertiary IPv6 DNS server IP address
-ddns	State of DDNS (enabled or disabled)
-dnsrc	Preferred DDNS domain name (dhcp or manual)
-ddn	Manually specified DDN
-ddncur	Current DDN (read only)
-р	Preferred DNS servers (ipv4 or ipv6)

ethtousb command

Use the **ethtousb** command to display and configure Ethernet to Ethernet-over-USB port mapping.

The command allows you to map an external Ethernet port number to a different port number for Ethernet-over-USB.

Running the **ethtousb** command with no options displays Ethernet-over-USB information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-en	Ethernet-over-USB state	enabled, disabled
-mx	Configure port mapping for index <i>x</i>	Port pair, separated by a colon (:), of the form <i>port1:port2</i> Where:
		• The port index number, <i>x</i> , is specified as an integer from 1 to 10 in the command option.
		• <i>port1</i> of the port pair is the External Ethernet port number.
		• <i>port2</i> of the port pair is the Ethernet-over-USB port number.
-rm	Remove port mapping for specified index	1 through 10
		Port map indexes are displayed using the ethtousb command with no options.

Syntax:

```
ethtousb [options]
option:
    -en state
    -mx port_pair
    -rm map_index
```

Example:

```
system> ethtousb  -en enabled -m1 100:200 -m2 101:201
system> ethtousb
  -en enabled
  -m1 100:200
  -m2 101:201
system> ethtousb -rm 1
system>
```

gprofile command

Use the gprofile command to display and configure group profiles for the IMM2.

Option	Description	Values
-clear	Deletes a group	enabled, disabled
-n	The name of the group	String of up to 63 characters for <i>group_name</i> . The <i>group_name</i> must be unique.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-a	Role-based authority level	supervisor, operator, rbs <role list="">: nsc am rca rcvma pr bc cel ac Role list values are specified using a pipe separated list of values.</role>
-h	Displays the command usage and options	

```
gprofile [1 - 16 group_profile_slot_number] [options]
options:
-clear state
-n group_name
-a authority level:
    -nsc network and security
    -am user account management
    -rca remote console access
    -rcvma remote console and remote disk access
    -pr remote server power/restart access
    -bc basic adapter configuration
    -cel ability to clear event logs
    -ac advanced adapter configuration
-h help
```

ifconfig command

Use the **ifconfig** command to configure the Ethernet interface. Type ifconfig eth0 to display the current Ethernet interface configuration. To change the Ethernet interface configuration, type the options, followed by the values. To change the interface configuration, you must have at least Adapter Networking and Security Configuration authority.

Option	Description	Values
-state	Interface state	disabled, enabled
-C	Configuration method	dhcp, static, dthens (dthens corresponds to the try dhcp server , if it fails use static config option on the web interface)
-i	Static IP address	Address in valid format
-g	Gateway address	Address in valid format
-s	Subnet mask	Address in valid format
-n	Host name	String of up to 63 characters. The string can include letters, digits, periods, underscores, and hyphens.
-r	Data rate	10, 100, auto
-d	Duplex mode	full, half, auto
-m	MTU	Numeric between 60 and 1500
-1	LAA	MAC address format. Multicast addresses are not allowed (the first byte must be even).
-dn	Domain name	Domain name in valid format

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-auto	Autonegotiation setting, which determines whether the Data rate and Duplex network settings are configurable	true, false
-nic	NIC access	shared, dedicated
-address_table	Table of automatically-generated IPv6 addresses and their prefix lengths Note: The option is visible only if IPv6 and stateless auto-configuration are enabled.	This value is read-only and is not configurable
-ipv6	IPv6 state	disabled, enabled
-lla	Link-local address Note: The link-local address only appears if IPv6 is enabled.	The link-local address is determined by the IMM2. This value is read-only and is not configurable.
-ipv6static	Static IPv6 state	disabled, enabled
-i6	Static IP address	Static IP address for Ethernet channel 0 in IPv6 format
-p6	Address prefix length	Numeric between 1 and 128
-g6	Gateway or default route	IP address for the gateway or default route for Ethernet channel 0 in IPv6
-dhcp6	DHCPv6 state	disabled, enabled
-sa6	IPv6 stateless autoconfig state	disabled, enabled

```
ifconfig eth0 [options]
options:
 -state interface_state
 -c config_method
 -i static_ipv4_ip_address
 -g ipv4_gateway_address
 -s subnet_mask
 -n hostname
 -r data_rate
 -d duplex_mode
 -m max transmission unit
 -1 locally_administered_MAC
 -dn domain name
 -auto state
 -nic state
 -address_table
  -ipv6 state
 -ipv6static state
 -sa6 state
 -i6 static_ipv6_ip_address
 -g6 ipv6_gateway_address
 -p6 length
```

Example:

```
system> ifconfig eth0
-state enabled
-c dthens
-i 192.168.70.125
-g 0.0.0
-s 255.255.255.0
-n IMM2A00096B9E003A
-r auto
-d auto
-m 1500
-b 00:09:6B:9E:00:3A
-1 00:00:00:00:00
system> ifconfig eth0 -c static -i 192.168.70.133
These configuration changes will become active after the next reset of the IMM2.
system>
```

Note: The **-b** option in the ifconfig display is for the burned-in MAC address. The burned-in MAC address is read-only and is not configurable.

keycfg command

Use the **keycfg** command to display, add, or delete activation keys. These keys control access to optional IMM2 Features on Demand (FoD) features.

- When **keycfg** is run without any options, the list of installed activation keys is displayed. Key information displayed includes an index number for each activation key, the type of activation key, the date through which the key is valid, the number of uses remaining, the key status, and a key description.
- Add new activation keys through file transfer.
- Delete old keys by specifying the number of the key or the type of key. When deleting keys by type, only the first key of a given type is deleted.

Option	Description	Values
-add	Add activation key	Values for the -ip, -pn, -u, -pw, and -f command options.
-ip	IP address of TFTP server with activation key to add	Valid IP address for TFTP server.
-pn	Port number for TFTP/SFTP server with activation key to add	Valid port number for TFTP/SFTP server (default 69/22).
-u	User name for SFTP server with activation key to add	Valid user name for SFTP server.
-pw	Password for SFTP server with activation key to add	Valid password for SFTP server.
-f	File name for activation key to add	Valid file name for activation key file.
-del	Delete activation key by index number	Valid activation key index number from keycfg listing.
-deltype	Delete activation key by key type	Valid key type value.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

```
Syntax:
keycfg [options]
option:
  -add
      -ip ip_address
     -pn port number
     -u username
     -pw password
     -f filename
  -del key_index
  -deltype key_type
Example:
system> keycfg
           Valid Uses Status Description
10/10/2010 5 "valid" "IMM remote presence"
10/20/2010 2 "valid" "IMM feature"
ID Type Valid
1 4
2 3
system>
```

Idap command

Use the **ldap** command to display and configure the LDAP protocol configuration parameters.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-a	User authentication method	local only, LDAP only, local first then LDAP, LDAP first then local
-aom	Authentication only mode	enabled, disabled
-b	Binding method	anonymous, bind with ClientDN and password, bind with Login Credential
-с	Client distinguished name	String of up to 127 characters for <i>client_dn</i>
-d	Search domain	String of up to 63 characters for search_domain
-f	Group filter	String of up to 127 characters for group_filter
-fn	Forest name	For active directory environments. String of up to 127 characters.
-g	Group search attribute	String of up to 63 characters for group_search_attr
-1	Login permission attribute	String of up to 63 characters for string
-p	Client password	String of up to 15 characters for <i>client_pw</i>
-pc	Confirm client password	String of up to 15 characters for <i>confirm_pw</i> Command usage is: ldap -p <i>client_pw</i> -pc <i>confirm_pw</i> This option is required when you change the client password. It compares the <i>confirm_pw</i> argument with the <i>client_pw</i> argument. The command will fail if the arguments do not match.
-r	Root entry distinguished name (DN)	String of up to 127 characters for <i>root_dn</i>

Option	Description	Values
-rbs	Enhanced Role-Based Security for active directory users	enabled, disabled
-s1ip	Server 1 host name/IP address	String up to 127 characters or an IP address for <i>host name/ip_addr</i>
-s2ip	Server 2 host name/IP address	String up to 127 characters or an IP address for <i>host name/ip_addr</i>
-s3ip	Server 3 host name/IP address	String up to 127 characters or an IP address for <i>host name/ip_addr</i>
-s4ip	Server 4 host name/IP address	String up to 127 characters or an IP address for <i>host name/ip_addr</i>
-s1pn	Server 1 port number	A numeric port number up to 5 digits for <i>port_number</i>
-s2pn	Server 2 port number	A numeric port number up to 5 digits for <i>port_number</i>
-s3pn	Server 3 port number	A numeric port number up to 5 digits for <i>port_number</i>
-s4pn	Server 4 port number	A numeric port number up to 5 digits for <i>port_number</i>
-t	Server target name	When the –rbs option is enabled, this field specifies a target name that can be associated with one or more roles on the Active Directory server through the Role-Based Security (RBS) Snap-In tool.
-u	UID search attribute	String of up to 63 characters for search_attrib
-V	Get LDAP server address through DNS	off, on
-h	Displays the command usage and options	

ldap [options] options: -a loc |ldap |locld |ldloc -aom enable/disabled -b anon | client | login -c client_dn -d search_domain -f group_filter -fn forest name -g group_search_attr -1 string -p client_pw -pc confirm_pw -r root dn -rbs enable/disabled -slip host name/ip_addr -s2ip host name/ip_addr -s3ip host name/ip_addr -s4ip host name/ip_addr -s1pn port_number -s2pn port_number -s3pn port_number -s4pn port_number -t name -u search_attrib -v off|on -h

ntp command

Use the ntp command to display and configure the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Description	Values
Enables or disables the Network Time Protocol	enabled, disabled
Name or IP address of the Network Time Protocol server. This is the index number of the Network Time Protocol server.	The name of the NTP server to be used for clock synchronization. The range of the index number of the NTP server is from -i1 through -i4.
The frequency (in minutes) that the IMM2 clock is synchronized with the Network Time Protocol server	3 - 1440 minutes
Requests an immediate synchronization with the Network Time Protocol server	No values are used with this parameter.
	Enables or disables the Network Time ProtocolName or IP address of the Network Time Protocol server. This is the index number of the Network Time Protocol server.The frequency (in minutes) that the IMM2 clock is synchronized with the Network Time Protocol serverRequests an immediate synchronization with the Network Time Protocol

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Syntax:

ntp [options]
options:
-en state
-i hostname/ip_addr
-f frequency
-synch

Example:

system> ntp
-en: disabled
-f: 3 minutes
-i: not set

passwordcfg command

Use the **passwordcfg** command to display and configure the password parameters.

Option	Description
-legacy	Sets account security to a predefined legacy set of defaults
-high	Sets account security to a predefined high set of defaults
-exp	Maximum password age (0 - 365 days). Set to 0 for no expiration.
-cnt	Number of previous passwords that cannot be reused (0 - 5)
-nul	Allows accounts with no password (yes no)
-h	Displays the command usage and options

Syntax:

```
passwordcfg [options]
options: {-high}|{-legacy}|{-exp|-cnt|-nul}
-legacy
-high
-exp:
-cnt:
-nul:
-h
Example:
system> passwordcfg
Security Level: Legacy
system> passwordcfg -exp 365
ok
system> passwordcfg -nul yes
ok
system> passwordcfg -cnt 5
ok
system> passwordcfg
Security Level: Customize
-exp: 365
-cnt: 5
-nul: allowed
```

ports command

Use the ports command to display and configure IMM2 ports.

Running the **ports** command with no options displays information for all IMM2 ports. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-open	Display open ports	
-reset	Reset ports to default settings	
-httpp	HTTP port number	Default port number: 80
-httpsp	HTTPS port number	Default port number: 443
-telnetp	Telnet legacy CLI port number	Default port number: 23
-sshp	SSH legacy CLI port number	Default port number: 22
-snmpap	SNMP agent port number	Default port number: 161
-snmptp	SNMP traps port number	Default port number: 162
-rpp	Remote presence port number	Default port number: 3900
-cimhp	CIM over HTTP port number	Default port number: 5988
-cimhsp	CIM over HTTPS port number	Default port number: 5989

Syntax: ports [options] option: -open

```
-reset
-httpp port_number
-httpsp port_number
-telnetp port_number
-sshp port_number
-snmptp port_number
-rpp port_number
-cimhp port_number
-cimhsp port_number
```

```
system> ports
-httpp 80
-httpsp 443
-rpp 3900
-snmpap 161
-snmptp 162
-sshp 22
-telnetp 23
-cimhp 5988
-cimhsp 5989
system>
```

portcfg command

Use the **portcfg** command to configure the IMM2 for the serial redirection feature.

The IMM2 must be configured to match the server internal serial port settings. To change the serial port configuration, type the options, followed by the values. To change the serial port configuration, you must have at least Adapter Networking and Security Configuration authority.

Note: The server external serial port can only be used by the IMM2 for IPMI functionality. The CLI is not supported through the serial port. The **serred** and **cliauth** options that were present in the Remote Supervisor Adapter II CLI are not supported.

Running the **portcfg** command with no options displays serial port configuration. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-b	Baud rate	9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200
-р	Parity	none, odd, even
-S	Stop bits	1, 2
-climode	CLI mode	0, 1, 2
		Where:
		• 0 = none: The CLI is disabled
		• 1 = cliems: The CLI is enabled with EMS-compatible keystroke sequences
		• 2 = cliuser: The CLI is enabled with user-defined keystroke sequences

Note: The number of data bits (8) is set in the hardware and cannot be changed.

```
portcfg [options]
options:
    -b baud_rate
    -p parity
    -s stopbits
    -climode mode
Example:
system> portcfg
-b : 57600
-climode : 2 (CLI with user defined keystroke sequence)
-p : even
-s : 1
system> portcfg -b 38400
ok
system>
```

restore command

Use the restore command to restore system settings from a backup file.

Option	Description	Values
-f	Backup file name	Valid file name
-рр	Password or pass-phrase used to encrypt passwords inside the backup file	Valid password or quote delimited pass-phrase
-ip	IP address of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid IP address
-pn	Port number of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid port number (default 69/22)
-u	Username for SFTP server	Valid user name
-pw	Password for SFTP server	Valid password

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Syntax:

```
restore [options]
option:
-f filename
-pp password
-ip ip_address
-pn port_number
-u username
-pw password
```

Example:

system> restore -f imm-back.cli -pp xxxxxx -ip 192.168.70.200
ok
system>

restoredefaults command

Use the **restoredefaults** command to restore all IMM2 settings to the factory default.

• There are no options for the **restoredefaults** command.

• You will be asked to confirm the command before it is processed.

Syntax: restoredefaults

Example: system> restoredefaults

This action will cause all IMM settings to be set to factory defaults.

If this is the local system, you will lose your TCP/IP connection as a result. You will need to reconfigure the IMM network interface to restore connectivity. After the IMM configuration is cleared, the IMM will be restarted.

```
Proceed? (y/n)
Y
Restoring defaults...
```

set command

Use the set command to change IMM2 settings.

- Some IMM2 settings can be changed with a simple **set** command.
- Some of these settings, such as environment variables, are used by the CLI.
- Use the **show** command to display values set using the **set** command.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
value	Set value for specified path or setting	Appropriate value for specified path or setting.

Syntax: set [options] option: value

smtp command

Use the **smtp** command to display and configure settings for the SMTP interface.

Running the **smtp** command with no options displays all SMTP interface information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-auth	SMTP authentication support	enabled, disabled
-authepw	SMTP authentication encrypted password	Valid password string
-authmd	SMTP authentication method	CRAM-MD5, LOGIN
-authn	SMTP authentication user name	String (limited to 256 characters)
-authpw	SMTP authentication password	String (limited to 256 characters)
-pn	SMTP port number	Valid port number.

Option	Description	Values
-S	SMTP server IP address or hostname	Valid IP address or hostname (63 character limit)

smtp [options]
option:
 -auth enabled|disabled
 -authepw password
 -authmd CRAM-MD5|LOGIN
 -authn username
 -authpw password
 -s ip_address_or_hostname
 -pn port_number

Example:

system> smtp
-s test.com
-pn 25
system>

snmp command

Use the snmp command to display and configure SNMP interface information.

Running the **snmp** command with no options displays all SNMP interface information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-a	SNMPv1 agent	on, off Note: To enable the SNMPv1 agent, the following criteria must be met:
		• IMM2 contact specified using the -cn command option.
		• IMM2 location specified using the -l command option.
		• At least one SNMP community name specified using one of the - <i>cx</i> command options.
		• At least one valid IP address is specified for each SNMP community using one of the <i>-cxiy</i> command options.
-a3	SNMPv3 agent	on, off Note: To enable the SNMPv3 agent, the following criteria must be met:
		• IMM2 contact specified using the -cn command option.
		• IMM2 location specified using the -l command option.
-t	SNMP traps	on, off

Option	Description	Values
-1	IMM2 location	String (limited to 47 characters). Note:
		• Arguments containing spaces must be enclosed in quotation marks. No leading or trailing spaces are allowed in arguments.
		• Clear the IMM2 location by specifying no argument or by specifying an empty string as the argument, such as "".
-cn	IMM2 contact name	String (limited to 47 characters). Note:
		 Arguments containing spaces must be enclosed in quotation marks. No leading or trailing spaces are allowed in arguments.
		• Clear the IMM2 contact name by specifying no argument or by specifying an empty string as the argument, such as "".
-сх	SNMP community <i>x</i> name	String (limited to 15 characters). Note:
		• <i>x</i> is specified as 1, 2, or 3 in the command option to indicate the community number.
		 Arguments containing spaces must be enclosed in quotation marks. No leading or trailing spaces are allowed in arguments.
		 Clear an SNMP community name by specifying no argument or by specifying an empty string as the argument, such as "".
-cxiy	SNMP community <i>x</i> IP address or hostname <i>y</i>	Valid IP address or hostname (limited to 63 characters). Note:
		• <i>x</i> is specified as 1, 2, or 3 in the command option to indicate the community number.
		• <i>y</i> is specified as 1, 2, or 3 in the command option to indicate the IP address or hostname number.
		• An IP address or hostname can only contain dots, underscores, minus signs, letters and digits. No embedded spaces or consecutive periods are allowed.
		• Clear an SNMP community IP address or hostname by specifying no argument.
-cax	SNMPv3 community <i>x</i> access type	get, set, trap Note: <i>x</i> is specified as 1, 2, or 3 in the command option to indicate the community number.

snmp [options]
option:
 -a state
 -a3 state
 -t state
 -l location
 -cn contact_name
 -c1 snmp_community_1_name
 -c2 snmp_community_2_name
 -c3 snmp_community_3_name

```
-cli1 community_1_ip_address_or_hostname_1
-cli2 community_1_ip_address_or_hostname_2
-cli3 community_1_ip_address_or_hostname_3
-c2i1 community_2_ip_address_or_hostname_1
-c2i2 community_2_ip_address_or_hostname_2
-c2i3 community_3_ip_address_or_hostname_1
-c3i2 community_3_ip_address_or_hostname_2
-c3i3 community_3_ip_address_or_hostname_2
-c3i3 community_3_ip_address_or_hostname_3
-ca1 community_1_access_type
-ca2 community_2_access_type
-ca3 community_3_access_type
```

Example:

```
system> snmp
-a Enabled
-a3 Enabled
-t Enabled
-1 RTC,NC
-cn Snmp Test
-c1 public
-c1i1 192.44.146.244
-c1i2 192.44.146.181
-c1i3 192.44.143.16
-cal set
-ch1 specific
-c2 private
-c2i1 192.42.236.4
-c2i2
-c2i3
-ca2 get
-ch2 specific
-c3
-c3i1
-c3i2
-c3i3
-ca3 get
-ch3 ipv4only
system>
```

snmpalerts command

Use the snmpalerts command to manage alerts sent via SNMP.

Running **snmpalerts** with no options displays all SNMP alert settings. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-status	SNMP alert status	on, off

Option	Description	Values
-crt	Sets critical events that send alerts	all, none, custom:te vo po di fa cp me in re ot
		Custom critical alert settings are specified using a pipe separated list of values of the form snmpalerts -crt custom:telvo , where custom values are:
		• te: critical temperature threshold exceeded
		 vo: critical voltage threshold exceeded
		• po: critical power failure
		• di: hard disk drive failure
		• fa: fan failure
		• cp: microprocessor failure
		• me: memory failure
		• in: hardware incompatibility
		• re: power redundancy failure
		• ot: all other critical events
-crten	Send critical event	enabled, disabled
criteri	alerts	
-wrn	Sets warning events that send alerts	all, none, custom:rp te vo po fa cp me ot
		Custom warning alert settings are specified using a
		pipe separated list of values of the form snmpalerts
		-wrn custom:rp te, where custom values are:
		• rp: power redundancy warning
		• te: warning temperature threshold exceeded
		• vo: warning voltage threshold exceeded
		• po: warning power threshold exceeded
		• fa: non-critical fan event
		• cp: microprocessor in degraded state
		me: memory warning
		ot: all other warning events
-wrnen	Send warning event alerts	enabled, disabled
-sys	Sets routine events	all, none, custom:lo tio ot po bf til pf el ne
	that send alerts	Custom routine alert settings are specified using a pipe separated list of values of the form snmpalerts -sys custom:lo tio , where custom values are:
		lo: successful remote login
		• tio: operating system timeout
		• ot: all other informational and system events
		• po: system power on/off
		bf: operating system boot failure
		• til: operating system loader watchdog timeout
		• pf: predicted failure (PFA)
		el: event log 75% full
		 ne: network change
-sysen	Send routine event	enabled, disabled

```
snmpalerts [options]
options:
    -status status
    -crt event_type
    -crten state
    -wrn event_type
    -wrnen state
    -sys event_type
    -sysen state
```

srcfg command

Use the **srcfg** command to indicate the key sequence to enter the CLI from the serial redirection mode. To change the serial redirect configuration, type the options, followed by the values. To change the serial redirect configuration, you must have at least Adapter Networking and Security Configuration authority.

Note: The IMM2 hardware does not provide for a serial port to serial port pass-through capability. Therefore the -passthru and entercliseq options which are present in the Remote Supervisor Adapter II CLI are not supported.

Running the **srcfg** command with no options displays the current serial redirection keystroke sequence. The following table shows the arguments for the srcfg -entercliseq command option.

Option	Description	Values
-entercliseq	Enter a CLI keystroke sequence	User-defined keystroke sequence to enter the CLI. Note: This sequence must have at least one character and at most 15 characters. The caret symbol (^) has a special meaning in this sequence. It denotes Ctrl for keystrokes that map to Ctrl sequences (for example, ^[for the escape key and ^M for carriage return). All occurrences of ^ are interpreted as part of a Ctrl sequence. Refer to an ASCII-to-key conversion table for a complete list of Ctrl sequences. The default value for this field is ^[(which is Esc followed by (.

Syntax: srcfg [options] options: -entercliseq entercli_keyseq

Example:

```
system> srcfg
-entercliseq ^[Q
system>
```

sshcfg command

Use the sshcfg command to display and configure SSH parameters.

Running the **sshcfg** command with no options displays all SSH parameters. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-cstatus	State of SSH CLI	enabled, disabled

Option	Description	Values
-hk gen	Generate SSH server private key	
-hk rsa	Display server RSA public key	

sshcfg [options]
option:
 -cstatus state
 -hk gen
 -hk rsa

Example:

```
system> sshcfg
-cstatus enabled
CLI SSH port 22
ssh-rsa 2048 bit fingerprint: b4:a3:5d:df:0f:87:0a:95:f4:d4:7d:c1:8c:27:51:61
1 SSH public keys installed
system>
```

ssl command

Use the ssl command to display and configure the SSL parameters.

Note: Before you can enable an SSL client, a client certificate must be installed.

Running the **ssl** command with no options displays SSL parameters. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-ce	Enables or disables an SSL client	on, off
-se	Enables or disables an SSL server	on, off
-cime	Enables or disables CIM over HTTPS on the SSL server	on, off

Syntax:

portcfg [options]
options:
 -ce state
 -se state
 -cime state

Parameters: The following parameters are presented in the option status display for the **ssl** command and are output only from the CLI:

Server secure transport enable

This status display is read-only and cannot be set directly.

Server Web/CMD key status

This status display is read-only and cannot be set directly. Possible command line output values are as follows:

Private Key and Cert/CSR not available

Private Key and CA-signed cert installed Private Key and Auto-gen self-signed cert installed Private Key and Self-signed cert installed Private Key stored, CSR available for download

SSL server CSR key status

This status display is read-only and cannot be set directly. Possible command line output values are as follows:

Private Key and Cert/CSR not available

Private Key and CA-signed cert installed

Private Key and Auto-gen self-signed cert installed

Private Key and Self-signed cert installed

Private Key stored, CSR available for download

SSL client LDAP key status

This status display is read-only and cannot be set directly. Possible command line output values are as follows as follows:

Private Key and Cert/CSR not available

Private Key and CA-signed cert installed

Private Key and Auto-gen self-signed cert installed

Private Key and Self-signed cert installed

Private Key stored, CSR available for download

SSL client CSR key status

This status display is read-only and cannot be set directly. Possible command line output values are as follows:

Private Key and Cert/CSR not available

Private Key and CA-signed cert installed

Private Key and Auto-gen self-signed cert installed

Private Key and Self-signed cert installed

Private Key stored, CSR available for download

sslcfg command

Use the **sslcfg** command to display and configure SSL for the IMM2 and manage certificates.

Running the **sslcfg** command with no options displays all SSL configuration information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-server	SSL server status	enabled, disabled Note: The SSL server can be enabled only if a valid certificate is in place.
-client	SSL client status	enabled, disabled Note: The SSL client can be enabled only if a valid server or client certificate is in place.
-cim	CIM over HTTPS status	enabled, disabled Note: CIM over HTTPS can be enabled only if a valid server or client certificate is in place.

Option	Description	Values
-cert	Generate self-signed certificate	server, client, sysdir Note:
		• Values for the -c , -sp , -cl , -on , and -hn command options are required when generating a self-signed certificate.
		• Values for the -cp , -ea , -ou , -s , -gn , -in , and -dq command options are optional when generating a self-signed certificate.
-csr	Generate CSR	server, client, sysdir Note:
		• Values for the -c , -sp , -cl , -on , and -hn command options are required when generating a CSR.
		• Values for the -cp , -ea , -ou , -s , -gn , -in , -dq , -cpwd , and -un command options are optional when generating a CSR.
-i	IP address for TFTP/SFTP server	Valid IP address Note: An IP address for the TFTP or SFTP server must be specified when uploading a certificate, or downloading a certificate or CSR.
-pn	Port number of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid port number (default 69/22)
-u	User name for SFTP server	Valid user name
-pw	Password for SFTP server	Valid password
-1	Certificate filename	Valid filename Note: A filename is required when downloading or uploading a certificate or CSR. If no filename is specified for a download, the default name for the file is used and displayed.
-dnld	Download certificate file	This option takes no arguments; but, must also specify values for the -cert or -csr command option (depending on the certificate type being downloaded). This option takes no arguments; but, must also specify values for the -i command option, and -I (optional) command option.
-upld	Imports certificate file	This option takes no arguments, but must also specify values for the -cert , -i , and -l command options.
-tcx	Trusted certificate <i>x</i> for SSL client	import, download, remove Note: The trusted certificate number, x , is specified as an integer from 1 to 3 in the command option.
-с	Country	Country code (2 letters) Note: Required when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-sp	State or province	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Required when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-cl	City or locality	Quote-delimited string (maximum 50 characters) Note: Required when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.

Option	Description	Values
-on	Organization name	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Required when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-hn	IMM2 hostname	String (maximum 60 characters) Note: Required when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-cp	Contact person	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-ea	Contact person email address	Valid email address (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-ou	Organizational unit	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-S	Surname	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-gn	Given name	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-in	Initials	Quote-delimited string (maximum 20 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-dq	Domain name qualifier	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a self-signed certificate or CSR.
-cpwd	Challenge password	String (minimum 6 characters, maximum 30 characters) Note: Optional when generating a CSR.
-un	Unstructured name	Quote-delimited string (maximum 60 characters) Note: Optional when generating a CSR.

```
sslcfg [options]
option:
 -server state
 -client state
 -cim state
 -cert certificate_type
 -csr certificate_type
 -i ip_address
 -pn port_number
  -u username
 -pw password
 -1 filename
 -dnld
 -upld
 -tcx action
 -c country_code
 -sp state_or_province
-cl city_or_locality
  -on organization_name
  -hn imm_hostname
  -cp contact person
```

```
-ea email_address
-ou organizational_unit
-s surname
-gn given_name
-in initials
-dq dn_qualifier
-cpwd challenge_password
-un unstructured_name
```

Example:

```
system> sslcfg
-server enabled
-client disabled
-sysdir enabled
SSL Server Certificate status:
A self-signed certificate is installed
SSL Client Certificate status:
A self-signed certificate is installed
SSL CIM Certificate status:
A self-signed certificate is installed
SSL Client Trusted Certificate status:
Trusted Certificate 1: Not available
 Trusted Certificate 2: Not available
 Trusted Certificate 3: Not available
 Trusted Certificate 4: Not available
system>
```

telnetcfg command

Use the telnetcfg command to display and configure Telnet settings.

Running the **telnetcfg** command with no options displays the Telnet state. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-en	Telnet state	disabled, 1, 2 Note: If not disabled, Telnet is enabled for either one or two users.

```
Syntax:
```

```
telnetcfg [options]
option:
-en state
```

Example:

```
system> telnetcfg
-en 1
system>
```

thermal command

Use the **thermal** command to display and configure the thermal mode policy of the host system.

Running the **thermal** command with no options displays the thermal mode policy. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-mode	Thermal mode selection	normal, performance

Syntax: thermal [options] option: -mode thermal_mode

Example:

system> thermal
-mode normal
system>

timeouts command

Use the **timeouts** command to display the timeout values or change them. To display the timeouts, type timeouts. To change timeout values, type the options followed by the values. To change timeout values, you must have at least Adapter Configuration authority.

The following table shows the arguments for the timeout values. These values match the graduated scale pull-down options for server timeouts on the web interface.

Option	Timeout	Units	Values
-f	Power off delay	minutes	disabled, 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120
-1	Loader timeout	minutes	disabled, 0.5, 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5, 3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 7.5, 10, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120
-0	Operating system timeout	minutes	disabled, 2.5, 3, 3.5, 4

Syntax:

```
timeouts [options]
options:
-f power_off_delay_watchdog_option
-o OS_watchdog_option
-1 loader_watchdog_option
```

Example:

```
system> timeouts
-o disabled
-1 3.5
system> timeouts -o 2.5
ok
system> timeouts
-o 2.5
-1 3.5
```

usbeth command

Use the **usbeth** command to enable or disable the in-band LAN over USB interface.

Syntax: usbeth [options] options: -en <enabled|disabled>

Example:

system>usbeth
-en : disabled
system>usbeth -en enabled
ok
system>usbeth
-en : disabled

users command

Use the **users** command to access all user accounts and their authority levels. The **users** command is also used to create new user accounts and modify existing accounts.

Running the **users** command with no options displays a list of users and some basic user information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-user_index	User account index number	1 through 12, inclusive, or all for all users.
-n	User account name	Unique string containing only numbers, letters, periods, and underscores. Minimum of 4 characters and maximum of 16 characters.
-р	User account password	String that contains at least one alphabetic and one non-alphabetic character. Minimum of 6 characters and maximum of 20 characters. Null creates an account without a password that the user must set during their first login.
-a	User authority level	super, ro, custom
		Where:
		• super (supervisor)
		• ro (read only)
		 custom is followed by a colon and list of values that are separated by a pipe (), of the form custom:am rca. These values can be used in any combination.
		am (user account management access)
		rca (remote console access)
		rcvma (remote console and virtual media access)
		pr (remote server power/restart access)
		cel (ability to clear event logs)
		bc (adapter configuration - basic)
		nsc (adapter configuration - network and security)
		ac (Adapter configuration - advanced)
-ep	Encryption password (for backup/restore)	Valid password
-clear	Erase specified user account	User account index number to erase must be specified, following the form:
		users -clear <i>-user_index</i>
-curr	Display users currently logged in	

Option	Description	Values
-sauth	SNMPv3 authentication protocol	HMAC-MD5, HMAC-SHA, none
-spriv	SNMPv3 privacy protocol	CBC-DES, AES, none
-spw	SNMPv3 privacy password	Valid password
-sepw	SNMPv3 privacy password (encrypted)	Valid password
-sacc	SNMPv3 access type	get, set
-strap	SNMPv3 trap hostname	Valid hostname
-pk	Display SSH public key for user	 User account index number. Note: Each SSH key assigned to the user is displayed, along with an identifying key index number. When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (<i>-userindex</i> option), of the form: users -2 -pk. All keys are in OpenSSH format.
-е	Display entire SSH key in OpenSSH format (SSH public key option)	This option takes no arguments and must be used exclusive of all other users -pk options. Note: When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (<i>-userindex</i> option), of the form: users -2 -pk -e.
-remove	Remove SSH public key from user (SSH public key option)	Public key index number to remove must be given as a specific <i>-key_index</i> or <i>-all</i> for all keys assigned to the user. Note: When using the SSH public key options, the <i>-</i> pk option must be used after the user index (<i>-userindex</i> option), of the form: users <i>-</i> 2 <i>-</i> pk <i>-</i> remove <i>-</i> 1.
-add	Add SSH public key for user (SSH public key option)	 Quote-delimited key in OpenSSH format Note: The -add option is used exclusive of all other users -pk command options. When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (-userindex option), of the form: users -2 -pk -add "AAAAB3NzC1yc2EAAAABIwAAA QEAvfnTUzRF7pdBuaBy4d0/aIFasa/Gtc+o/w1ZnuC4aD HMA1UmnMyL0CiIaN0y400ICEKCqjKEhrYymtAoVtfKApv Y39GpnSGRC/qcLGWLM4cmirKL5kxHN0qIcwbT1NPceoKH j46X7E+mq1fWnAhhjDpcVFjagM3Ek2y7w/tBGrwGgN7DP HJU1tzcJy68mEAnIrzjUoR98Q3/B9cJD77ydGKe8rPdI2 hIEpXR5dNUiupA1Yd8PSSMgdukASKEd3eRRZTB13SAtMu cUsTkYj1Xcqex10Qz4+N50R6MbNcw1sx+mTEAvvcpJhug a70UNPGhLJM16k7jeJiQ8Xd2p Xb0ZQ=="

Option	Description	Values
-upld	Upload an SSH public key	Requires the -i and -l options to specify key location. Note:
	(SSH public key option)	 The -upld option is used exclusive of all other users -pk command options (except for -i and -1).
		 To replace a key with a new key, you must specify a -key_index. To add a key to the end of the list of current keys, do not specify a key index.
		 When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (-userindex option), of the form: users -2 -pk -upld -i tftp://9.72.216.40/ -l file.key.
-dnld	Download the specified SSH public key	Requires a <i>-key_index</i> to specify the key to download and the <i>-</i> i and <i>-</i> l options to specify the download location on another computer running a TFTP server. Note:
	(SSH public key option)	 The -dnld option is used exclusive of all other users -pk command options (except for -i, -l, and -key_index).
		 When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (-userindex option), of the form: users -2 -pk -dnld -1 -i tftp://9.72.216.40/ -1 file.key.
-i	IP address of TFTP/SFTP server for uploading or downloading a key file	Valid IP address Note: The -i option is required by the users -pk -upld and users -pk -dnld command options.
	(SSH public key option)	
-pn	Port number of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid port number (default 69/22) Note: An optional parameter for the users -pk -upld
	(SSH public key option)	and users -pk -dnld command options.
-u	User name for SFTP server	Valid user name Note: An optional parameter for the users -pk -upld and users -pk -dnld command options.
	(SSH public key option)	
-pw	Password for SFTP server	Valid password Note: An optional parameter for the users -pk -upld
	(SSH public key option)	and users -pk -dnld command options.
-1	File name for uploading or downloading a key file via TFTP or SFTP	Valid file name Note: The -1 option is required by the users -pk -up1d and users -pk -dn1d command options.
	(SSH public key option)	
-af	Accept connections from host	A comma-separated list of hostnames and IP addresses, limited to 511 characters. Valid characters include: alphanumeric, comma, asterisk, question
	(SSH public key option)	mark, exclamation point, period, hyphen, colon and percent sign.

Option	Description	Values
-cm	Comment (SSH public key option)	Quote-delimited string of up to 255 characters. Note: When using the SSH public key options, the -pk option must be used after the user index (- <i>userindex</i> option), of the form: users -2 -pk -cm "This is my comment.".

Syntax:

```
users [options]
options:
  -user_index
  -n username
  -p password
   -a authority_level
  -ep encryption_password
  -clear
  -curr
  -sauth protocol
  -spriv protocol
  -spw password
  -sepw password
   -sacc state
   -strap hostname
users -pk [options]
options:
   -e
  -remove index
  -add key
  -upld
  -dnld
  -i ip_address
  -pn port_number
  -u username
  -pw password
  -1 filename
  -af list
  -cm comment
```

Example:

```
system> users
1. USERID Read/Write
Password Expires: no expiration
2. manu Read Only
Password Expires: no expiration
3. eliflippen Read Only
Password Expires: no expiration
4. <not used>
5. jacobyackenovic custom:cel ac
Password Expires: no expiration
system> users -7 -n sptest -p PASSWORD -a custom:am |rca|ce1|nsc|ac
ok
system> users
1. USERID Read/Write
Password Expires: no expiration
2. test
          Read/Write
Password Expires: no expiration
3. test2
          Read/Write
Password Expires: no expiration
4. <not used>
5. jacobyackenovic custom:cel|ac
Password Expires: no expiration
6. <not used>
7. sptest custom:am|rca|cel|nsc|ac
```

Password Expires: no expiration
8. <not used>
9. <not used>
10. <not used>
11. <not used>
12. <not used>
system>

IMM2 control commands

The IMM2 control commands are as follows:

- "alertentries command"
- "batch command" on page 179
- "clearcfg command" on page 180
- "clock command" on page 180
- "identify command" on page 181
- "info command" on page 181
- "resetsp command" on page 182

alertentries command

Use the **alertentries** command to manage alert recipients.

- alertentries with no options displays all alert entry settings.
- **alertentries -number -test** generates a test alert to the given recipient index number.
- **alertentries -number** (where number is 0-12) displays alert entry settings for the specified recipient index number or allows you to modify the alert settings for that recipient.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-number	Alert recipient index number to display, add, modify, or delete	1 through 12
-status	Alert recipient status	on, off
-type	Alert type	email, syslog
-log	Include event log in alert email	on, off
-n	Alert recipient name	String
-е	Alert recipient email address	Valid email address
-ip	Syslog IP address or hostname	Valid IP address or hostname
-pn	Syslog port number	Valid port number
-del	Delete specified recipient index number	
-test	Generate a test alert to specified recipient index number	

Option	Description	Values
-crt	Sets critical events that send alerts	all, none, custom:te vo po di fa cp me in re ot
	Serie dicitis	Custom critical alert settings are specified using a pipe separated list of values of the form alertentries -crt
		custom:te vo , where custom values are:
		• te: critical temperature threshold exceeded
		 vo: critical voltage threshold exceeded
		• po: critical power failure
		• di: hard disk drive failure
		• fa: fan failure
		cp: microprocessor failure
		• me: memory failure
		in: hardware incompatibility
		• re: power redundancy failure
		• ot: all other critical events
-crten	Send critical event alerts	enabled, disabled
-wrn	Sets warning events that send alerts	all, none, custom:rp te vo po fa cp me ot
	that seria alerts	Custom warning alert settings are specified using a
		pipe separated list of values of the form alertentries
		-wrn custom:rp te, where custom values are:
		• rp: power redundancy warning
		• te: warning temperature threshold exceeded
		• vo: warning voltage threshold exceeded
		• po: warning power threshold exceeded
		• fa: non-critical fan event
		• cp: microprocessor in degraded state
		• me: memory warning
		ot: all other warning events
-wrnen	Send warning event alerts	enabled, disabled
-sys	Sets routine events	all, none, custom:lo tio ot po bf til pf el ne
	that send alerts	Custom routine alert settings are specified using a
		pipe separated list of values of the form alertentries
		-sys custom:lo tio, where custom values are:
		lo: successful remote login
		• tio: operating system timeout
		• ot: all other informational and system events
		• po: system power on/off
		• bf: operating system boot failure
		• til: operating system loader watchdog timeout
		• pf: predicted failure (PFA)
		• el: event log 75% full
		ne: network change
-sysen	Send routine event alerts	enabled, disabled

```
Syntax:
alertentries [options]
  options:
   -number recipient_number
      -status status
      -type alert type
      -log include log state
      -n recipient_name
      -e email_address
      -ip ip addr or hostname
      -pn port number
      -del
      -test
      -crt event_type
      -crten state
      -wrn event type
      -wrnen state
      -sys event_type
      -sysen state
```

```
Example:
system> alertentries
1. test
2. <not used>
3. <not used>
4. <not used>
5. <not used>
6. <not used>
7. <not used>
8. <not used>
9. <not used>
10. <not used>
11. <not used>
12. <not used>
system> alertentries -1
-status off
-log off
-n test
-e test@mytest.com
-crt all
-wrn all
-sys none
system>
```

batch command

Use the **batch** command to execute one or more CLI commands that are contained in a file.

- Comment lines in the batch file begin with a #.
- When running a batch file, commands that fail are returned along with a failure return code.
- Batch file commands that contain unrecognized command options might generate warnings.

The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-f	Batch file name	Valid file name
-ip	IP address of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid IP address

Option	Description	Values
-pn	Port number of TFTP/SFTP server	Valid port number (default 69/22)
-u	Username for SFTP server	Valid user name
-pw	Password for SFTP server	Valid password

Syntax:

```
batch [options]
option:
    -f filename
    -ip ip_address
    -pn port_number
    -u username
    -pw password
```

Example:

system> batch -f sslcfg.cli -ip 192.168.70.200
1 : sslcfg -client -dnld -ip 192.168.70.20
Command total/errors/warnings: 8 / 1 / 0
system>

clearcfg command

Use the **clearcfg** command to set the IMM2 configuration to its factory defaults. You must have at least Advanced Adapter Configuration authority to issue this command. After the configuration of the IMM2 is cleared, the IMM2 is restarted.

clock command

Use the **clock** command to display the current date and time according to the IMM2 clock and the GMT offset. You can set the date, time, GMT offset, and daylight saving time settings.

Note the following information:

- For a GMT offset of +2, -7, -6, -5, -4, or -3, special daylight saving time settings are required:
 - For +2, the daylight saving time options are as follows: off, ee (Eastern Europe), mik (Minsk), tky (Turkey), bei (Beirut), amm (Amman), jem (Jerusalem).
 - For -7, the daylight saving time settings are as follows: off, mtn (Mountain), maz (Mazatlan).
 - For -6, the daylight saving time settings are as follows: off, mex (Mexico), cna (Central North America).
 - For -5, the daylight saving time settings are as follows: off, cub (Cuba), ena (Eastern North America).
 - For -4, the daylight saving time settings are as follows: off, asu (Asuncion), cui (Cuiaba), san (Santiago), cat (Canada Atlantic).
 - For -3, the daylight saving time settings are as follows: off, gtb (Godthab), moo (Montevideo), bre (Brazil - East).
- The year must be from 2000 to 2089, inclusive.
- The month, date, hours, minutes, and seconds can be single-digit values (for example, 9:50:25 instead of 09:50:25).

• GMT offset can be in the format of +2:00, +2, or 2 for positive offsets, and -5:00 or -5 for negative offsets.

Syntax:

clock [options]
options:
-d mm/dd/yyyy
-t hh:mm:ss
-g gmt offset
-dst on/off/special case

Example:

```
system> clock
12/12/2011 13:15:23 GMT-5:00 dst on
system> clock -d 12/31/2011
ok
system> clock
12/31/2011 13:15:30 GMT-5:00 dst on
```

identify command

Use the **identify** command to turn the chassis identify LED on or off, or to have it flash. The -d option can be used with -s on to turn the LED on for only for the number of seconds specified with the -d parameter. The LED then turns off after the number of seconds elapses.

Syntax: identify [options] options: -s on/off/blink -d seconds

Example:

```
system> identify
-s off
system> identify -s on -d 30
ok
system>
```

info command

Use the info command to display and configure information about the IMM2.

Running the **info** command with no options displays all IMM2 location and contact information. The following table shows the arguments for the options.

Option	Description	Values
-name	IMM2 name	String
-contact	Name of IMM2 contact person	String
-location	IMM2 location	String
-room ¹	IMM2 room identifier	String
-rack ¹	IMM2 rack identifier	String
-rup ¹	Position of IMM2 in rack	String
-ruh	Rack unit height	Read only

Option	Description	Values
-bbay	Blade bay location	Read only
1. Value is	read only and cannot be	e reset if the IMM2 resides in a NGP environment.

Syntax:

```
info [options]
option:
    -name imm_name
    -contact contact_name
    -location imm_location
    -room room_id
    -rack rack_id
    -rup rack_unit_position
    -ruh rack_unit_height
    -bbay blade_bay
```

resetsp command

Use the **resetsp** command to restart the IMM2. You must have at least Advanced Adapter Configuration authority to be able to issue this command.

Appendix A. Getting help and technical assistance

If you need help, service, or technical assistance or just want more information about IBM products, you will find a wide variety of sources available from IBM to assist you.

Use this information to obtain additional information about IBM and IBM products, determine what to do if you experience a problem with your IBM system or optional device, and determine whom to call for service, if it is necessary.

Before you call

Before you call, make sure that you have taken these steps to try to solve the problem yourself.

If you believe that you require IBM to perform warranty service on your IBM product, the IBM service technicians will be able to assist you more efficiently if you prepare before you call.

- Check all cables to make sure that they are connected.
- Check the power switches to make sure that the system and any optional devices are turned on.
- Check for updated software, firmware, and operating-system device drivers for your IBM product. The IBM Warranty terms and conditions state that you, the owner of the IBM product, are responsible for maintaining and updating all software and firmware for the product (unless it is covered by an additional maintenance contract). Your IBM service technician will request that you upgrade your software and firmware if the problem has a documented solution within a software upgrade.
- If you have installed new hardware or software in your environment, check http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/serverproven/compat/us/eserver.html to make sure that the hardware and software is supported by your IBM product.
- Go to http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/ to check for information to help you solve the problem.
- Gather the following information to provide to IBM Support. This data will help IBM Support quickly provide a solution to your problem and ensure that you receive the level of service for which you might have contracted.
 - Hardware and Software Maintenance agreement contract numbers, if applicable
 - Machine type number (IBM 4-digit machine identifier)
 - Model number
 - Serial number
 - Current system UEFI and firmware levels
 - Other pertinent information such as error messages and logs
- Go to http://www.ibm.com/support/electronic/ to submit an Electronic Service Request. Submitting an Electronic Service Request will start the process of determining a solution to your problem by making the pertinent information available to IBM Support quickly and efficiently. IBM service technicians can start working on your solution as soon as you have completed and submitted an Electronic Service Request.

You can solve many problems without outside assistance by following the troubleshooting procedures that IBM provides in the online help or in the documentation that is provided with your IBM product. The documentation that comes with IBM systems also describes the diagnostic tests that you can perform. Most systems, operating systems, and programs come with documentation that contains troubleshooting procedures and explanations of error messages and error codes. If you suspect a software problem, see the documentation for the operating system or program.

Using the documentation

Information about your IBM system and preinstalled software, if any, or optional device is available in the documentation that comes with the product. That documentation can include printed documents, online documents, readme files, and help files.

See the troubleshooting information in your system documentation for instructions for using the diagnostic programs. The troubleshooting information or the diagnostic programs might tell you that you need additional or updated device drivers or other software. IBM maintains pages on the World Wide Web where you can get the latest technical information and download device drivers and updates. To access these pages, go to http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/.

Getting help and information from the World Wide Web

Up-to-date information about IBM products and support is available on the World Wide Web.

On the World Wide Web, up-to-date information about IBM systems, optional devices, services, and support is available at http://www.ibm.com/systems/ support/. IBM System x information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/x/. IBM BladeCenter information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/bladecenter/. IBM IntelliStation information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/intellistation/.

How to send DSA data to IBM

Use the IBM Enhanced Customer Data Repository to send diagnostic data to IBM.

Before you send diagnostic data to IBM, read http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/send_http.html .

You can use any of the following methods to send diagnostic data to IBM:

- Standard upload: http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/send_http.html
- Standard upload with the system serial number: http://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload_hw/
- Secure upload: http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/ send_http.html#secure
- Secure upload with the system serial number: https://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload_hw/

Creating a personalized support web page

You can create a personalized support web page by identifying IBM products that are of interest to you.

To create a personalized support web page, go to http://www.ibm.com/support/ mysupport/. From this personalized page, you can subscribe to weekly email notifications about new technical documents, search for information and downloads, and access various administrative services.

Software service and support

Through IBM Support Line, you can get telephone assistance, for a fee, with usage, configuration, and software problems with your IBM products.

For more information about Support Line and other IBM services, see http://www.ibm.com/services/us/index.wss or see http://www.ibm.com/planetwide/ for support telephone numbers. In the U.S. and Canada, call 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378).

Hardware service and support

You can receive hardware service through your IBM reseller or IBM Services.

To locate a reseller authorized by IBM to provide warranty service, go to http://www.ibm.com/partnerworld/ and click **Find Business Partners** on the right side of the page. For IBM support telephone numbers, see http://www.ibm.com/planetwide/ . In the U.S. and Canada, call 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378).

In the U.S. and Canada, hardware service and support is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. In the U.K., these services are available Monday through Friday, from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m.

IBM Taiwan product service

Use this information to contact IBM Taiwan product service.



IBM Taiwan product service contact information:

IBM Taiwan Corporation 3F, No 7, Song Ren Rd. Taipei, Taiwan Telephone: 0800-016-888

Appendix B. Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM[®] product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product, and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies.

A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the web at "Copyright and trademark information" at http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml .

Adobe and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Cell Broadband Engine is a trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc., in the United States, other countries, or both and is used under license therefrom.

Intel, Intel Xeon, Itanium, and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Important notes

Processor speed indicates the internal clock speed of the microprocessor; other factors also affect application performance.

CD or DVD drive speed is the variable read rate. Actual speeds vary and are often less than the possible maximum.

When referring to processor storage, real and virtual storage, or channel volume, KB stands for 1024 bytes, MB stands for 1,048,576 bytes, and GB stands for 1,073,741,824 bytes.

When referring to hard disk drive capacity or communications volume, MB stands for 1,000,000 bytes, and GB stands for 1,000,000 bytes. Total user-accessible capacity can vary depending on operating environments.

Maximum internal hard disk drive capacities assume the replacement of any standard hard disk drives and population of all hard disk drive bays with the largest currently supported drives that are available from IBM.

Maximum memory might require replacement of the standard memory with an optional memory module.

Each solid-state memory cell has an intrinsic, finite number of write cycles that the cell can incur. Therefore, a solid-state device has a maximum number of write cycles that it can be subjected to, expressed as "total bytes written" (TBW). A device that has exceeded this limit might fail to respond to system-generated commands or might be incapable of being written to. IBM is not responsible for replacement of a device that has exceeded its maximum guaranteed number of program/erase cycles, as documented in the Official Published Specifications for the device.

IBM makes no representation or warranties regarding non-IBM products and services that are ServerProven[®], including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. These products are offered and warranted solely by third parties.

IBM makes no representations or warranties with respect to non-IBM products. Support (if any) for the non-IBM products is provided by the third party, not IBM.

Some software might differ from its retail version (if available) and might not include user manuals or all program functionality.

Particulate contamination

Attention: Airborne particulates (including metal flakes or particles) and reactive gases acting alone or in combination with other environmental factors such as humidity or temperature might pose a risk to the device that is described in this document.

Risks that are posed by the presence of excessive particulate levels or concentrations of harmful gases include damage that might cause the device to malfunction or cease functioning altogether. This specification sets forth limits for particulates and gases that are intended to avoid such damage. The limits must not be viewed or used as definitive limits, because numerous other factors, such as temperature or moisture content of the air, can influence the impact of particulates or environmental corrosives and gaseous contaminant transfer. In the absence of specific limits that are set forth in this document, you must implement practices that maintain particulate and gas levels that are consistent with the protection of human health and safety. If IBM determines that the levels of particulates or gases in your environment have caused damage to the device, IBM may condition provision of repair or replacement of devices or parts on implementation of appropriate remedial measures to mitigate such environmental contamination. Implementation of such remedial measures is a customer responsibility.

Limits	
• The room air must be continuously filtered with 40% atmospheric dust spot efficiency (MERV 9) according to ASHRAE Standard 52.2 ¹ .	
• Air that enters a data center must be filtered to 99.97% efficiency or greater, using high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters that meet MIL-STD-282.	
• The deliquescent relative humidity of the particulate contamination must be more than 60% ² .	
• The room must be free of conductive contamination such as zinc whiskers.	
 Copper: Class G1 as per ANSI/ISA 71.04-1985³ Silver: Corrosion rate of less than 300 Å in 30 days 	

Table 9. Limits for particulates and gases

 ASHRAE 52.2-2008 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size. Atlanta: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.

2. The deliquescent relative humidity of particulate contamination is the relative humidity at which the dust absorbs enough water to become wet and promote ionic conduction.

 ANSI/ISA-71.04-1985. Environmental conditions for process measurement and control systems: Airborne contaminants. Instrument Society of America, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina, U.S.A.

Documentation format

The publications for this product are in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) and should be compliant with accessibility standards. If you experience difficulties when you use the PDF files and want to request a web-based format or accessible PDF document for a publication, direct your mail to the following address:

Information Development IBM Corporation 205/A015 3039 E. Cornwallis Road P.O. Box 12195 Research Triangle Park, North Carolina 27709-2195 U.S.A.

In the request, be sure to include the publication part number and title.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Telecommunication regulatory statement

This product may not be certified in your country for connection by any means whatsoever to interfaces of public telecommunications networks. Further certification may be required by law prior to making any such connection. Contact an IBM representative or reseller for any questions.

Electronic emission notices

When you attach a monitor to the equipment, you must use the designated monitor cable and any interference suppression devices that are supplied with the monitor.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) statement

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that might cause undesired operation.

Industry Canada Class A emission compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Australia and New Zealand Class A statement

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

European Union EMC Directive conformance statement

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU Council Directive 2004/108/EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a nonrecommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

Attention: This is an EN 55022 Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Responsible manufacturer:

International Business Machines Corp. New Orchard Road Armonk, New York 10504 914-499-1900

European Community contact:

IBM Deutschland GmbH Technical Regulations, Department M372 IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany Telephone: +49 7032 15 2941 Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

Germany Class A statement

Deutschsprachiger EU Hinweis: Hinweis für Geräte der Klasse A EU-Richtlinie zur Elektromagnetischen Verträglichkeit

Dieses Produkt entspricht den Schutzanforderungen der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG zur Angleichung der Rechtsvorschriften über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit in den EU-Mitgliedsstaaten und hält die Grenzwerte der EN 55022 Klasse A ein. Um dieses sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte wie in den Handbüchern beschrieben zu installieren und zu betreiben. Des Weiteren dürfen auch nur von der IBM empfohlene Kabel angeschlossen werden. IBM übernimmt keine Verantwortung für die Einhaltung der Schutzanforderungen, wenn das Produkt ohne Zustimmung der IBM verändert bzw. wenn Erweiterungskomponenten von Fremdherstellern ohne Empfehlung der IBM gesteckt/eingebaut werden.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden: "Warnung: Dieses ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funk-Störungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen zu ergreifen und dafür aufzukommen."

Deutschland: Einhaltung des Gesetzes über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten

Dieses Produkt entspricht dem "Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG)". Dies ist die Umsetzung der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland.

Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) (bzw. der EMC EG Richtlinie 2004/108/EG) für Geräte der Klasse A

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt, in Übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Einhaltung der EMV Vorschriften ist der Hersteller:

International Business Machines Corp. New Orchard Road Armonk, New York 10504 914-499-1900

Der verantwortliche Ansprechpartner des Herstellers in der EU ist:

IBM Deutschland GmbH Technical Regulations, Abteilung M372 IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany Telephone: +49 7032 15 2941 Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

Generelle Informationen:

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 55024 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

Japan VCCI Class A statement

この装置は、クラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用する と電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策 を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio interference may occur, in which case the user may be required to take corrective actions.

Korea Communications Commission (KCC) statement

이 기기는 업무용(A급)으로 전자파적합기기로 서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목 적으로 합니다.

This is electromagnetic wave compatibility equipment for business (Type A). Sellers and users need to pay attention to it. This is for any areas other than home.

Russia Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Class A statement

ВНИМАНИЕ! Настоящее изделие относится к классу А. В жилых помещениях оно может создавать радиопомехи, для снижения которых необходимы дополнительные меры

People's Republic of China Class A electronic emission statement

中华人民共和国"A类"警告声明

声 明 此为A级产品,在生活环境中,该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下, 可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

Taiwan Class A compliance statement

警告使用者:
這是甲類的資訊產品,在
居住的環境中使用時,可
能會造成射頻干擾,在這
種情況下,使用者會被要
求採取某些適當的對策。

Index

A

absolute mouse control 100 access remote control 105 Telnet 49, 171 accessible documentation 190 accseccfg command 142 activation key install 125, 154 manage 50, 154 remove 127, 154 Active Directory Users LDAP 49, 173 ActiveX applet updating 95 advanced Ethernet settings 62 advanced level features 3 advanced management module 1, 4, 5 Advanced Settings Utility (ASU) 1 alertcfg command 144 alertentries command 177 alphabetical command list 132 assistance, getting 183 asu command 144 Australia Class A statement 191 autonegotiation set 48, 152

В

backup command 148 backup configuration IMM2 49 backup status view IMM2 49 baseboard management controller (BMC) 1 basic level features 2 batch command 179 binding method LDAP server 49, 155 BIOS (basic input/output system) 1 blade servers 1, 4, 5 BladeCenter 1, 4, 5 blue screen capture 96 browser requirements 4

С

Canada Class A electronic emission statement 191 certificate handling CIM over HTTPS 76 secure LDAP client 77 certificate management CIM over HTTPS 49, 167, 168 HTTPS server 49, 167, 168 LDAP 49, 167, 168 SSH server 49, 166 China Class A electronic emission statement 193 CIM over HTTP port set 49, 158 CIM over HTTPS certificate management 49, 167, 168 security 49, 167, 168 CIM over HTTPS port set 49, 158 Class A electronic emission notice 190 clearcfg command 180 clearlog command 134 CLI key sequence set 47, 159 client distinguished name LDAP server 49, 155 clock command 180 collecting service and support data 122 command-line interface (CLI) accessing 129 command syntax 130 description 129 features and limitations 131 logging in 129 commands accseccfg 142 alertcfg 144 alertentries 177 asu 144 backup 148 batch 179 clearcfg 180 clearlog 134 clock 180 console 141 dhcpinfo 148 dns 149 ethtousb 151 exit 133 fans 134 ffdc 134 gprofile 151 help 133 history 133 identify 181 ifconfig 152 info 181 keycfg 154 ldap 155 led 135 ntp 157 passwordcfg 157 portcfg 159 ports 158 power 140 pxeboot 140 readlog 137 reset 141 resetsp 182 restore 160 restoredefaults 160

commands (continued) set 161 show 138 smtp 161 snmp 162 snmpalerts 164 srcfg 166 sshcfg 166 ssl 167 sslcfg 168 syshealth 138 telnetcfg 171 temps 139 thermal 171 timeouts 172 usbeth 172 users 173 volts 139 vpd 140 commands, alphabetical list 132 commands, types of configuration 141 IMM2 control 177 monitor 134 serial redirect 141 server power and restart 140 utility 133 configuration backup IMM2 49 configuration commands 141 configuration restore IMM2 49, 160 configuration summary, viewing 9 configuration view IMM2 49 configure CIM over HTTPS protocol 76 DDNS 48, 149 DDNS settings 66 DNS 48, 149 DNS settings 66 Ethernet 48, 152 Ethernet over USB 49, 151 Ethernet settings 62 HTTPS protocol 75 IMM2 49 IPv4 48, 152 IPv6 48, 152 LDAP 48, 155 LDAP client protocol 77 LDAP server 48, 155 LDAP settings 67 network protocols 62 port assignments 73 ports 49, 158 security 49 security settings 74 serial port 47, 53, 159 SMTP 48, 161 SMTP settings 67 SNMP alert settings 64

configure (continued) SNMPv1 48, 162 SNMPv1 traps 48, 162 SNMPv3 user accounts 48, 173 ssh server 79 Telnet 171 Telnet settings 49, 72 USB 49, 151 USB settings 73 user account security levels 48, 142 configuring global login settings 58 serial-to-SSH redirection 130 serial-to-Telnet redirection 130 configuring the IMM2 options to configure the IMM2 47 console command 141 contamination, particulate and gaseous 189 controlling the power status of the server 94 create email notification 117 syslog notification 117 user account 47, 173 creating a personalized support web page 185 custom support web page 185

D

date set 47, 180 date and time, IMM2 setting 51 DDNS configure 48, 149 custom domain name 48, 149 DHCP server specified domain name 48, 149 domain name source 48, 149 manage 48, 149 default configuration IMM 160 IMM2 50 default static IP address 5 delete email notification 117 syslog notification 117 user 48, 173 delete group enable, disable 151 dhcpinfo command 148 disk, remote 105 disks option under Server Management tab 43 distinguished name, client LDAP server 49, 155 distinguished name, root LDAP server 49, 155 DNS configure 48, 149 IPv4 addressing 48, 149 IPv6 addressing 48, 149 LDAP server 48, 155 server addressing 48, 149

dns command 149 documentation format 190 using 184 domain name source DDNS 48, 149 domain name, custom DDNS 48, 149 domain name, DHCP server specified DDNS 48, 149 download service data option, overview 26 drives mapping 105 unmapping 105 DSA, sending data to IBM 184

Ε

electronic emission Class A notice 190 email recipients setting up 24 enhanced role-based security LDAP 49, 173 Ethernet configure 48, 152 Ethernet over USB configure 49, 151 port forwarding 49, 151 ethtousb command 151 European Union EMC Directive conformance statement 191 event log 113 event log 21 manage 113 event notification 24 event recipient 24 event recipients manage 113 event tab log 21 events recipients 117 events menu 113 events tab overview 21 exit command 133

F

fans command 134 FCC Class A notice 190 feature knock knock 102 features of IMM2 2 Features on Demand 125 install feature 125, 154 manage 50, 154 remove feature 127, 154 ffdc command 134 firmware view server 47, 140 firmware, server updating 107 FoD 125 FoD (continued) install feature 125, 154 manage 50, 154 remove feature 127, 154

G

gaseous contamination 189 Germany Class A statement 191 global login settings 58 global login settings account security level tab 59 general tab 58 gprofile command 151 group filter LDAP 49, 155 group profile management 57 group search attribute LDAP 49, 155

Η

hardware health 89 hardware service and support telephone numbers 185 help from the World Wide Web 184 from World Wide Web 184 sending diagnostic data to IBM 184 sources of 183 help command 133 history command 133 host name LDAP server 49, 155 set 48, 152 SMTP server 48, 161 host server startup sequence, changing 9 HTTP port set 49, 158 HTTPS port set 49, 158 HTTPS server certificate management 49, 167, 168 security 49, 167, 168

IBM blade servers 1, 4, 5
IBM BladeCenter 1, 4, 5
IBM System x Server Firmware description 1 Setup utility 5
IBM Taiwan product service 185
identify command 181
ifconfig command 152
IMM configure 49 default configuration 160 reset 182 reset configuration 160 restart 182 restore configuration 160 IMM management activation management key 84 configure network protocol 62 configuring user accounts 54 IMM configuration restore and modify IMM configuration 82 IMM properties serial port settings 53 restart IMM2 82 security settings 74 user accounts 54 group profiles 57 IMM management tab 46 IMM2 action descriptions 9 activation management key 84 backup configuration 49 backup status view 49 configuration backup 49 configuration options 47 configuration restore 49, 160 configuration view 49 default configuration 50 description 1 features 2 IMM2 advanced level 2 IMM2 basic level 2 IMM2 standard level 2 network connection 5 new functions 1 reset 50, 83 reset configuration 50 restart 50, 82 restore configuration 49 restore status view 49 serial redirection 130 setup wizard 50 view backup status 49 view configuration 49 view restore status 49 web interface 5 web user interface overview 13 IMM2 control commands 177 IMM2 features advanced level 3 basic level 2 IMM2 featuresstandard level features standard level 3 IMM2 management IMM properties date and time 51 reset IMM2 83 IMM2 tasks 93 IMM2 web session logging out 15 IMM2 web user interface events tab options overview 21 overview 13 service and support tab options overview 26 system status tab overview 16 important notices 188 info command 181

information center 184 install activation key 125, 154 install feature Features on Demand 125, 154 FoD 125, 154 international keyboard support in remote control 99 IP address configuring 5 IPv4 5 IPv6 5 LDAP server 49, 155 SMTP server 48, 161 IP address, default static 5 IPMI remote server management 129 IPMItool 129 IPv4 configure 48, 152 IPv4 addressing DNS 48, 149 IPv6 5 configure 48, 152 IPv6 addressing DNS 48, 149

J

Japan Class A electronic emission statement 192 Java 4, 105 Java applet updating 95

Κ

keyboard pass-through mode in remote control 99 keyboard support in remote control 98 keycfg command 154 knock knock feature enable 102 request remote session 102 user mode multi 102 single 102 Korea Class A electronic emission statement 193

L

latest OS failure screen option under Server Management tab 46 LDAP Active Directory Users 49, 173 certificate management 49, 167, 168 configure 48, 155 enhanced role-based security 49, 173 group filter 49, 155 group search attribute 49, 155 login permission attribute 49, 155 role-based security, enhanced 49, 173 security 49, 167, 168 server target name 49, 155 ldap command 155 LDAP server binding method 49, 155 client distinguished name 49, 155 configure 48, 155 DNS 48, 155 host name 49, 155 IP address 49, 155 password 49, 155 port number 49, 155 pre-configured 48, 155 root distinguished name 49, 155 search domain 48, 155 UID search attribute 49, 155 LDAP server port set 49, 155 led command 135 logging in to the IMM2 8 logging out of the IMM2 session 15 login permission attribute LDAP 49, 155

Μ

MAC address manage 48, 152 manage activation key 50, 154 DDNS 48, 149 Features on Demand 50, 154 FoD 50, 154 MAC address 48, 152 SNMPv1 communities 48, 162 user 47, 173 mapping drives 105 maximum sessions Telnet 49, 171 maximum transmission unit set 48, 152 memory option under Server Management tab 43 monitor commands 134 monitoring the server status 85 mouse control absolute 100 relative 100 relative with default Linux acceleration 100 mouse support in remote control 100 MTU set 48, 152

Ν

network connection 5 default static IP address 5 IP address, default static 5 static IP address, default 5 network protocol properties DDNS 66 Ethernet settings 62 LDAP 67 port assignments 73 SMTP 67 SNMP alert settings 64 Telnet 72 network protocol properties *(continued)* USB 73 New Zealand Class A statement 191 NGP 1 notes, important 188 notices 187 electronic emission 190 FCC, Class A 190 notices and statements 4 ntp command 157

0

online publications documentation update information 1 error code information 1 firmware update information 1 operating-system requirements 4 operating-system screen capture 96 options on the IMM management tab 46 server management tab 27 OS failure screen data capture 124 overview download service data 26 ssl 80

Ρ

page auto refresh option 13 particulate contamination 189 password LDAP server 49, 155 user 48, 173 passwordcfg command 157 People's Republic of China Class A electronic emission statement 193 performing IMM2 tasks 93 port forwarding Ethernet over USB 49, 151 port number LDAP server 49, 155 SMTP server 48, 161 port numbers set 49, 158 portcfg command 159 ports configure 49, 158 set numbers 49, 158 view open 49, 158 ports command 158 power actions 94 power command 140 pre-configured LDAP server 48, 155 processors option under Server Management tab 44 product service, IBM Taiwan 185 PXE Boot Agent 9 PXE network boot setting up 106 PXE network boot option under Server Management tab 45 pxeboot command 140

R

readlog command 137 relative mouse control 100 relative mouse control for Linux (default Linux acceleration) 100 remote access 2 remote boot 105 remote control absolute mouse control 100 accessing 105 exiting 106 international keyboard support 99 keyboard pass-through mode 99 keyboard support 98 mouse support 100 performance statistics 101 power and restart commands 101 relative mouse control 100 relative mouse control for Linux (default Linux acceleration) 100 screen capture 96 single cursor mode 101 video viewer 95 Video Viewer 97 virtual media session 95 Virtual Media Session 105 remote control feature 34, 95 remote control mouse support 100 Remote Control port set 49, 158 remote control, windows video viewer 34 virtual media session 34 Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) launching 102 remote disk 105 remote power control 101 remote presence functionality 95 enabling 96 Remote Supervisor Adapter II 1 remove activation key 127, 154 remove feature Features on Demand 127, 154 FoD 127, 154 requirements operating system 4 web browser 4 reset IMM 182 IMM2 50 reset command 141 reset configuration IMM 160 IMM2 50 resetsp command 182 restart IMM 182 IMM2 50 restore command 160 restore configuration IMM2 49, 160 restore status view IMM2 49 restoredefaults command 160 role-based levels operator 151

role-based levels *(continued)* rbs 151 supervisor 151 role-based security, enhanced LDAP 49, 173 root distinguished name LDAP server 49, 155 Russia Class A electronic emission statement 193

S

search domain LDAP server 48, 155 security CIM over HTTPS 49, 167, 168 CIM over HTTPS protocol 76 configure 49 HTTPS protocol 75 HTTPS server 49, 167, 168 LDAP 49, 167, 168 LDAP client 77 ssh server 79 SSH server 49, 166 ssl certificate handling 80 SSL certificate management 80 ssl overview 80 sending diagnostic data to IBM 184 Serial over LAN 129 serial port configuration 53 configure 47, 159 serial redirect command 141 serial-to-SSH redirection 130 serial-to-Telnet redirection 130 server addressing DNS 48, 149 server firmware updating 107 server firmware option under the Server Management tab 28 server management OS failure screen data 124 PXE network boot 106 server firmware 107 server timeouts, setting 50 Server Management disks option 43 latest OS failure screen option 46 memory option 43 processors option 44 PXE network boot option 45 server firmware option 28 server power actions option 42 server properties option 39 server timeouts option 45 server management tab 27 server power controlling 94 server power actions option under Server Management tab 42 server power and restart commands 140 server properties environmentals tab 39 general settings tab 39 hardware activity tab 39

server properties (continued) hardware information tab network hardware tab 39 system component information tab 39 system information tab 39 LED tab 39 server properties option under Server Management tab 39 server status monitoring 85 server target name LDAP 49, 155 server timeout selections 50 server timeouts option under Server Management tab 45 service and support before you call 183 hardware 185 software 185 service and support data collecting 122 downloading 122 service and support tab overview 26 sessions, maximum Telnet 49, 171 set autonegotiation 48, 152 CIM over HTTP port 49, 158 CIM over HTTPS port 49, 158 CLI key sequence 47, 159 date 47, 180 host name 48, 152 HTTP port 49, 158 HTTPS port 49, 158 LDAP server port 49, 155 maximum transmission unit 48, 152 MTU 48, 152 Remote Control port 49, 158 SNMP agent port 49, 158 SNMP Traps port 49, 158 SNMPv1 contact 48, 162 SNMPv3 contact 48, 162 SSH CLI port 49, 158 Telnet CLI port 49, 158 time 47, 180 user authentication method 48, 142 web inactivity timeout 48, 142 set command 161 set port numbers 49, 158 setting the IMM2 date and time 51 setting server timeouts 50 setting up alert recipients 24 settings advanced 62 CIM over HTTPS 76 DDNS 66 DNS 66 Ethernet 62 for the web session 13 global login 58 account security level tab 59 general tab 58

settings (continued) HTTPS 75 LDAP 67 LDAP client protocol 77 port assignments 73 security 74 SMTP 67 SNMP alert 64 ssh server 79 Telnet 72 USB 73 setup wizard IMM2 50 show command 138 single cursor mode 101 SMTP configure 48, 161 server host name 48, 161 server IP address 48, 161 server port number 48, 161 test 48 smtp command 161 SNMP agent port set 49, 158 snmp command 162 SNMP Traps port set 49, 158 snmpalerts command 164 SNMPv1 configure 48, 162 SNMPv1 communities manage 48, 162 SNMPv1 contact set 48, 162 SNMPv1 traps configure 48, 162 SNMPv3 contact set 48, 162 SNMPv3 settings user 48, 173 SNMPv3 user accounts configure 48, 173 software service and support telephone numbers 185 srcfg command 166 SSH CLI port set 49, 158 SSH keys user 48, 173 SSH server certificate management 49, 166 security 49, 166 sshcfg command 166 SSL certificate handling 80 certificate management 80 ssl command 167 sslcfg command 168 startup sequence, changing 9 static IP address, default 5 support web page, custom 185 syshealth command 138 system event notification 117 retry notification 117 system event notification 24 system health 88

system information 87 system status 85 system status page, overview 16 system status tab overview 16

Т

Taiwan Class A electronic emission statement 193 target name, server LDAP 49, 155 telecommunication regulatory statement 190 telephone numbers 185 Telnet access 49, 171 configure 171 maximum sessions 49, 171 Telnet CLI port set 49, 158 Telnet settings configure 49 telnetcfg command 171 temps command 139 test SMTP 48 test events generate 117 the system information viewing 87 thermal command 171 time set 47, 180 timeouts command 172 tools IPMItool 129 trademarks 187 trespass message option 14

U

UID search attribute LDAP server 49, 155 United States FCC Class A notice 190 unmapping drives 105 updating the ActiveX applet 95 the Java applet 95 updating firmware 95 USB configure 49, 151 usbeth command 172 user delete 48, 173 manage 47, 173 password 48, 173 SNMPv3 settings 48, 173 SSH keys 48, 173 user account create 47, 173 group profile 57 management 54 user account security levels configure 48, 142

user accounts configuring 54 user authentication method set 48, 142 users view current 48, 173 users command 173 using ActiveX client 34 Java client 34 utility commands 133

V

video color mode in remote control 97 Video Viewer absolute mouse control 100 exiting 106 international keyboard support 99 keyboard pass-through mode 99 mouse support 100 performance statistics 101 power and restart commands 101 relative mouse control 100 relative mouse control for Linux (default Linux acceleration) 100 screen capture 96 single cursor mode 101 video color mode 97, 98 view modes 97 view backup status IMM 49 view configuration IMM2 49 view current users 48, 173 view firmware information server 47, 140 view modes in remote control 97 view open ports 49, 158 view restore status IMM2 49 viewing the hardware health 89 the system health 88 the system status 85 Virtual Light Path 9 Virtual Media Session exiting 106 launch 105 map drives 105 remote disk 105 unmap drives 105 volts command 139 vpd command 140

W

Web browser requirements 4 web inactivity timeout set 48, 142 web interface logging in to web interface 8 web interface, opening and using 5 web session settings 13 working with events in the event log 21

IBW ®

Part Number: 00D2491

Printed in USA

(1P) P/N: 00D2491

